

C H I N E S E

Speak Chinese
(Pinyin Edition)

By
M. Gardner Tewksbury

June 1975

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER

COPYRIGHT NOTICE

This Pinyin version of M. G. Tewksbury, SPEAK CHINESE (copyright 1948), was prepared by Defense Language Institute and is printed with the kind permission of the copyright owners. It is not for duplication or public sale. It is reproduced by Defense Language Institute only for purposes of the U. S. Government. All inquiries regarding other uses should be addressed to Far Eastern Publications, Yale University, New Haven, Conn.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Description of the Sounds of Chinese	vii
Lesson 1 Descriptive Sentences	1
Lesson 2 Functive Sentences	9
Lesson 3 Indirect Object and Transposed Object	23
Lesson 4 Specifiers - Numbers - Measures	33
Lesson 5 Equative Sentences	46
Lesson 6 Money and Counting	56
Lesson 7 Auxiliary Verbs - Verb-Object Compounds	68
Lesson 8 Modification of Nouns: by Nouns and Stative Verbs	73
Lesson 9 Modification of Nouns: by Clauses	80
Lesson 10 Existence and Location	85
Lesson 11 Motion and Direction - Conveyance and Purpose	90
Lesson 12 Completed Action with <u>-le</u>	95
Lesson 13 Time When Expressions - Probability with <u>ba</u>	102
Lesson 14 Co-verbs of Interest, etc. - Indefinites	109
Lesson 15 Single and Double <u>-le</u> - Time Spent	115
Lesson 16 Compound Verbs - Expressing Manner	121
Lesson 17 The <u>ba</u> Construction - Continuance with <u>-zhe</u>	128
Lesson 18 Changed Status and Imminent Action with <u>-le</u>	136
Lesson 19 Reading the Clock - Supposition	143
Lesson 20 Experiential Suffix <u>-guo</u> - Relative Time	151
Lesson 21 Resultative Compound Verbs	157
Lesson 22 Similarity and Comparison	163
Lesson 23 Separation and Distance - Degrees of Comparison	170
Lesson 24 Selection and Inclusion - Co-verbs of Agent	177
Vocabulary	183
Index	196

PART I

SOUNDS IN CHINESE

The Pinyin system of romanization was officially adopted in 1958 by the People's Republic of China, which uses it for 1) teaching Mandarin pronunciation to children, minority groups, and foreigners; 2) a phonetic system in their own dictionaries; 3) representing names and placenames in the news. The People's Republic of China hopes that someday Pinyin may replace characters altogether.

Chinese Sounds with Close Counterparts in English

Many sounds in Mandarin Chinese are for practical purposes identical with their English counterparts. But in English some letters - particularly the vowels - have more than one value. We must therefore determine which of the values given to a certain letter in English is to be used when recording spoken Chinese.

The following vowels and vowel combinations present little or no problem:

a	as in <u>father</u>
i	as in <u>machine</u> (the symbol <u>i</u> is also used after certain initials to represent the so-called "zero" final. See p.)
e	as in <u>her</u> ; but after <u>y</u> as in <u>yet</u>
o	as in <u>worn</u>
u	as in <u>super</u> (<u>oo</u> not <u>iu</u>)
ai	as in <u>aisle</u>
ei	as in <u>eight</u>
ou	as in <u>boulder</u>
ao	as in <u>cow</u>

The following initial consonants have the same value in Chinese as in English:

m-, n-, l-, f-, s-, w-, y-

Final Consonants

Mandarin Chinese, the present-day standard for the whole country, uses very few final consonants: only -n and -ng and occasionally -r. The value of the preceding vowel is sometimes modified by these endings:

-an has a value between the o in John and the a in an; but -a and -ang are pronounced as in father.

-in and -ing follow the English sin and sing, but the simple -i is pronounced as machine.

-ian is pronounced between yen and the yan in Yankee.

Aspirate & Unaspirate Pairs: p- and b-; t- and d-; k- and g-; and the h- sound

The initial sounds p-, t-, and k- are aspirated as in English, but with a stronger puff of breath. Similarly the h- sound is rougher, more like the German h-.

The initial sounds b-, d-, and g- are unaspirate, do not have this puff of air, and are not voiced.

Consequently the distinction between these pairs is not the same as in the English:

pate	bate
tate	date
kate	gate

The unaspirate sounds in Chinese closely approximate the voiceless sounds in English when preceded by s- as in:

(s)pate	Sounds like the Chinese: bei
(s)tate	" dei
(s)kate	" gei

Thus the Chinese pairs are distinguished by the presence or absence of the puff of air.

Hissing Sounds: s-, x-, sh-

In English we have the sounds s- and sh-. In Chinese there is a third hissing sound lying between these two, which we write as x-. It may be immediately followed only by -i or -u (the German umlaut sound U). Additional vowels may be added, giving us these possible syllables:

<u>s-</u>	<u>x-</u>	<u>sh-</u>
sa	xi	sha
se	xu	she
su	xia	shu
sai	xie	shai
sei	xiu	shei
sou	xue	shou

To make this x- sound, try to isolate the hissing sound as it appears in English in the juncture between two words:

<u>miss you</u>	<u>less yet</u>
<u>bless ya</u>	<u>less yarn</u>
<u>less yoke</u>	

The Sounds: z- and c-

Another aspirate and unaspirate pair consists of c- and z-, which occur in English but not as initials. Look for them between words, as in:

<u>dad's high</u>	<u>it's high</u>
<u>dad's home</u>	<u>let's hope</u>
<u>dad's hay</u>	<u>it's hay</u>

These examples give close approximations of the Chinese syllables zai and cai, zou and cou.

Retroflex Sounds: r-, zh-, ch-, sh-

We have noted that the Chinese sh- is rougher than the English, an effect produced by making the tip of the tongue touch the roof of the mouth behind the ridge at the base of the teeth - farther back than in English. Apply the same procedure to zh-, ch-, and r-.

The Chinese r- is not like the English r-; nor does it have the Scottish burr nor the French guttural sound. Above all, don't trill it: follow carefully the instructions for the position of the tongue given above.

The Sounds: j- and q-

The sounds j- and q- occur only before the vowel sounds -i and -ü. They sound similar to English "j- and ch-", but with the tongue more forward. The position of the tongue is similar to the one you just learned for Chinese x-.

ji	ju	jia	jie	jiu	jiao
qi	qu	qia	qie	qiu	qiao

"Zero" Final Sounds

There are two groups of final sounds in Chinese for which it is difficult to find even an approximate equivalent in English.

The sounds s-, c-, and z- are used as complete syllables - that is, without a recognizable vowel after them. Whatever sound there may be is represented by the letter i, giving the syllables si, ci, and zi. Place the fore part of the tongue closer to the roof of your mouth, tense your muscles, and draw out the sound.

Similarly, the retroflex sounds r-, zh-, ch-, and sh- may also stand as complete syllables. The unrecognizable vowel sounds after these initials, then, are also represented by i. Thus we have ri, shi, chi, and zhi. All four of these sounds are pronounced with the tongue in the position described above. The last four differ chiefly in the degree of control exercised over the air escaping between the teeth. Zhi calls for the tightest position of the tongue.

The Umlaut u

This sound does not exist in English but is common to both German and French. In German it is written ü or ue. First, place your tongue so that you would be pronouncing ee (as in beet), then round your lips as if you were going to say oo (as in loot). The result if you obey orders strictly - is the umlaut u. (The extreme pursed-lip position will not be necessary after you have learned to make the sound.)

In syllables where the letter 'u' follows j-, q-, x-, and y-, it is always an umlaut u. Therefore it is not necessary to write 'ü'. The letter 'u' is sufficient.

For example:	jun	qun	xun	yun
<u>Not:</u>	jün	qün	xün	yün

Umlaut u may also occur after the initials n- and l-, in which case the two dots must be shown. For example:

nü nüe llü llüe

Pronunciation of some vowels changes following umlaut u. For example: in juan, quan, and xuan, the -an is pronounced like the an in ant.

In the examples jue, que, xue, nüe, and llüe, the e is pronounced like the e in yet.

Besides occurring with other sounds such as j-, q-, x-, n-, l-, -an, -e, and -n, umlaut u can occur by itself, in which case it is spelled "yu".

PART II

THE FOUR TONES OF STANDARD CHINESE

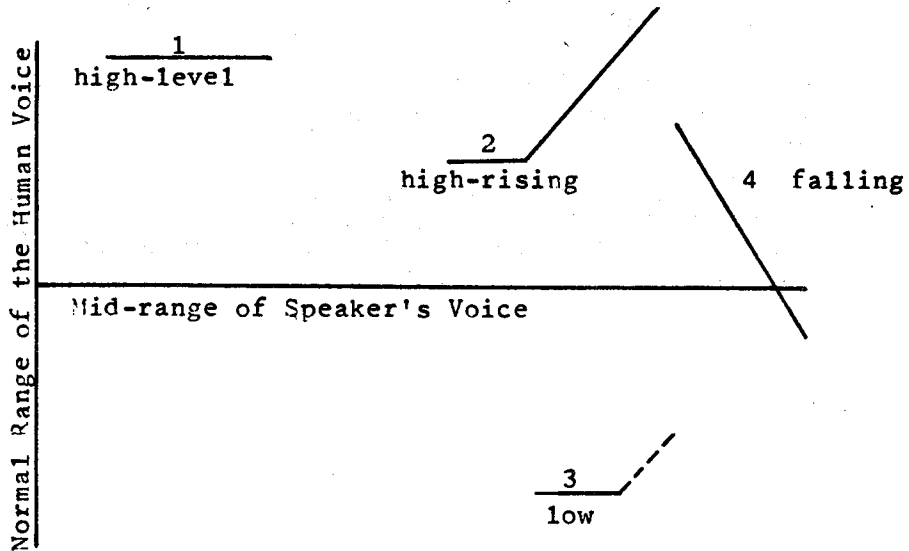
Tones - In learning to speak Chinese the initial problems seem more difficult than they really are. This is particularly true of pronunciation. As you have seen, the Chinese have very few sounds which cannot be found in the English language. One of the chief differences between the two languages is the characteristic tone, or movement of pitch, attached to each syllable of Chinese. For instance, in English, the word 'fan' is intelligible whether spoken with a rising inflection as in the question 'Do you have a fan?', or with a falling inflection in the statement 'Let me use your fan.' In Chinese the word 'fan' pronounced with a rising inflection means "to be bored, fed up"; with a falling inflection it means "food" or "cooked rice". A Chinese word or syllable that will convey a certain meaning when pronounced with a certain tone will yield either a different meaning or no meaning at all if pronounced with a different tone.

In the Peking dialect there are four tones. These tones vary relative to the range of the speaker's voice. They maintain their distinctive characteristics whether enunciated by a soprano voice or a bass voice. In combinations of syllables, the tones may vary slightly but are related to the tone which each syllable has in isolation. The four tones are as follows:

<u>No.</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Example</u>
1	high and level	-	gāo
2	high and rising	ˊ	máng
3	(a) by itself or at the end of a phrase, low and rising	ˇ	hǎo
	(b) before another syllable with third tone - the syllable is pronounced in the second tone		hěn hǎo hén hǎo
	(c) before syllables other than third tone - low with no rise		nǐ gāo nǐ máng nǐ lèi
4	falling from high to low		lèi

These may be placed on a diagram to indicate the relative position and pattern of the tones with relation to the middle range of the speaker's voice.

(See diagram on the following page)



For illustration of the meaning differences which accompany change of tone let us take the simple syllable ma, which may be pronounced in all four of the tones and with the following differences in meaning:

		<u>Means</u>
<u>mā</u>	pronounced in the high level first tone	mama
<u>má</u>	pronounced high and with a rising inflection (Put a little jerk in that rise)	hemp
<u>mǎ</u>	is at the bottom of your range and may rise slightly	horse
<u>mà</u>	snap it out as if you were giving orders, and with a short fall.	to curse

In the written language, meaning distinctions are clear because the written characters are different. In the spoken language you have only the correct tone and the setting of the word in the sentence to guide your comprehension.

How important these tonal differences are is evident from the two common words: mǎi meaning "buy" and mài meaning "sell".

Tonal Modifications - The first and second tone (high-level and high-rising) under certain conditions may alter the pronunciation of ou, iu, ui, and iao.

- (1) when y appears initially the ou is pronounced like the u in super. The Chinese syllable you pronounced with the first and second tones is like the English word you, while pronounced with the third and fourth tones it is like the yeo in yeoman.

- (2) when iu appears after an initial, the iu is pronounced like the English you if in the first or second tone, or as the English yeoman if in the third or fourth tone.
- (3) when ui appears after an initial, the ui is pronounced like the English do we, spoken rather quickly, in the first or second tone.
- (4) when iao appears after an initial, the iao is pronounced with a sound between the eo in yeoman and the eo in meow, in the first and second tones. In the third and fourth tones, it tends more toward the eo in meow.

PART III

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

The exercises which follow are aimed at sharpening the distinction between sounds easily confused in normal speech. Practice them in two ways: (1) pronounce them so as to make a clear distinction; (2) distinguish the sound when uttered by someone else. Sometimes the latter is harder than the former.

1. INITIALS: p- and b-, t- and d-, k- and g-

1.1 In the following practice make the initial p-, t-, or k- sound more explosive:

pā	tā	bā	pā
hā	kā	gā	kā
pà	tà	dà	tà
hà	pá	dǎ	tǎ
hǎ	tǎ	gá	hǎ
pēi	hēi	bēi	hēi
pái	tái	bái	pái
hòu	tòu	hòu	dòu
pǎo	hǎo	bǎo	gǎo

2. INITIALS: z- and c-

2.1 Contrast the initial sounds z- and c-:

zán	cán
zǎo	cǎo
zài	cài
zū	cū
zòu	còu

2.2 Distinguish z- and c- from other consonant sounds with which they are easily confused:

tā	cā
tàn	cán
tóng	cóng
dá	zá
dū	zū
dǒu	zǒu
sā	cā
sù	cù
sǎo	cǎo

3. INITIALS: sh-, zh-, ch-, r-

3.1 Practice:

shù	zhù	chù	rù
shú	zhú	chú	rú
shǔ	zhǔ	chǔ	rǔ
shū	zhū	chū	rū

3.2 Contrast these paired syllables:

chā	zhā	shā	chā
chǎng	zhǎng	shǎng	rǎng
chōu	shōu	zhū	chū
zá	zhá	chá	shá
sān	shān	sāng	shāng
zhǎng	rǎng	shǎng	chǎng
sǎo	shǎo	cǎo	zǎo

4. INITIALS: x-, j-, q-

4.1 Practice these for contrast:

sā	xiā	shā	xiā
sǎo	xiǎo	shàng	xiàng
zǎo	jiào	zhào	jiào
zāng	jiāng	zhā	jiā
cǎo	qiāo	chǎo	qiào
cā	qiā	chǎng	qiáng

4.2 Here is a review drill:

sān	cān
sǎo	cǎo
shàng	chàng
shǎo	chǎo
xiǎo	qiào
xiǎng	qiáng

5. FINALS: -iu, -ian, -ie

5.1 Contrast these syllables

dū	diū	yào	yòu
lú	liú	jiǎo	jiǔ
nú	niú	diào	diū
lǔ	liǔ	liào	liú

5.2 Note the tightness of the i sound and the difference in quality of a when i appears before it.

bīn	biān	lán	lián
mīn	mián	bān	biān
lǐn	liǎn	dǎn	diǎn
chìn	qiàn	màn	miàn

5.3 Note the difference in the value of u depending on the tone.

liǔ	liù
jiǔ	jiù
xiù	xiū

5.4 Contrast -i with -ie and -ia

xī	xiē	xiā
jǐ	jiē	jiǎ
qì	qiè	qià
xú	xué	

6. THE SOUND e:

6.1 Contrast drill

	ā zhà sǎ lá	ē zhè sě lé	yē jiè xiě lié
6.2	èn bēn shěn bèn	àn bān shǎn hàn	àng bāng shǎng hàng
6.3	wèn wén wén wēn	bèn pén hěn sēn	dùn tún hǔn sūn
6.4	nèn gēn chěn shén	nèng gēng chéng shéng	--- gūn chún shún
6.5	luàn suān chuán guǎn	lùn sūn chún gūn	

7. THE SOUND o/uo:

In the cases of the initials b-, p-, m-, and f- only, the uo final is not used; instead the u is dropped and only -o is used. In all other cases the -uo final is used. Pronunciation is the same in both cases.

7.1 Contrast drill

wā	wō	ē
là	luò	lè
guà	guò	--
shuǎ	shuǒ	--
---	ruò	rè
huá	huó	hé

7.2 Contrasts between -u and -o/-uo and -ou:

fú	fó	fóu
dū	duō	dōu
shū	shuō	shòu
gù	guò	gòu

8. "ZERO" FINAL: s-, z-, c-, zh-, ch-, sh-, and r-

The syllables above end with a final which we write with the letter i. This final occurs only after the initials s-, z-, and c-.

8.1 Contrasts between -u, "zero final"-i, and -e:

zǔ	zì	zé
sù	sì	sè
cù	cì	cè

8.2 Contrasts between -e and retroflex -i:

shé	shí	shǐ	shé
zhé	zhí	zhǐ	zhé
chē	chī	chǐ	chē
rè	rì	rǐ	rè

9. FINAL: Umlauted ü (This is the umlaut sound common in French and German)

As mentioned in Part I, only certain initials may precede the umlaut u. They are j-, q-, x-, l-, and n-. If no initial is voiced, the unspoken initial will be written with a y. Although the tone may differ, these syllables are:

yu	yue	yuan	yun
ju	jue	juan	jun
qu	que	quan	qun
xu	xue	xuan	xun
lü	lüe		
nü	nüe		

(Note that ü written with the two dots appears only in lü, lüe, nü, and nüe)

9.1 Our exercises contrast the umlaut ü with the sounds most easily confused with it. First -i and umlaut ü:

yǐ	yǔ
xǐ	xǔ
qì	qù
nì	nǔ

9.2 Contrasts between -iu and umlaut ü:

jiǔ	jǔ
liù	lǔ
niǔ	nǔ

9.3 In the next pairs the initials differ too:

zū	jū
zhù	jù
chù	qù

10. FINALS: -ün, -üe, -üan

yùn	yuè	yuàn
jūn	juè	juān
qún	qué	quán
xún	xué	xuán

10.1 Contrasts between -in and -ün:

yīn	yūn
jīn	jūn
chīn	qūn
xīn	xūn

10.2 Contrasts between -an, -ian, and -üan:

ān	yān	yuān
sàn	xiàn	xuān
chǎn	qiǎn	quǎn
zhán	jián	juán

10.3 Contrasts between -un and -ün:

zhūn	jūn
shùn	xùn
chún	qún

11. ADDITIONAL DRILLS

11.1 chi, zhi, shi: (retroflex -i)

chíle	shíge	shíbēn
shígēn	yìzhí	hǎochī
chī fàn	chīcài	chī ròu
dōng shì	shílì	shíshì
héshì	bái zhǐ	báo zhǐ
chēn zhǐ	chī jǐ	chī táng
zhìzàoqīn	zhìzàochǎng	lǐbàirì
kǔguā hǎochī	tā déi chīkǔ	tā xiǎng chī ròu

11.2 si, zi and toneless zi:

Zhōngguó zì	sìge	sìběn
dǎ zì	zìjǐ	dǎzìjǐ
fángzi	yìzi	yìzi
zhuōzi	kuàizi	wūzi
dāozì	wǒde zhuōzi	chāzi
nǐde wūzi	nǐmende zhuōzi	wǒmende wūzi
tāmende yìzi	wūzilíde zhōng	tāde yìzi

12. GENERAL DRILLS - While drilling the following phrases two things should be kept in mind: (i) Note distinctions in sound which might be hard to distinguish if the phrase were said very rapidly; (ii) Note the rhythmic patterns of tone sequence and be sure you get the rhythm of the phrase rather than isolated tones.

dōu gāo	tā gāo	gāo tōng
mǎi	mǎi shū	tā mǎi zhōng
tāmende gāo zhōng	tāmen dōu mǎi	tāmen dōu mǎi zhōng
shūbāo hào hēi	dōnghǎi hēile	kǔguā hǎo
tā bushūfu	tāde shūpù	shāfā bushūfu
wǒ dōu kàn	tā tài lǎo	shéi hěn gāo
fànwǎn	hǎokàn	tài màn
bābái	dàodí	lǎomí
bàngōngfèi	yángguífēi	dōu tónglèi
zuì cōngmíng	zuì lǎoshi	zuì qiǎdang

shàng chuán
dào wǔjīnháng
nuǎnqīlú
miànbāofáng
shǒutíxiāng
bié shuō ba
lǚxíngshè
lǎoyǔmì
gēnjūdi
xīmózhǐ
niúròugānr
ròu zhēn xián
shénme shíhou qù

shàng chuáng
yào wǔjīn mǐ
luàn dītú
dǎ huángháng
méi rén guǎn
děi shuō bā
gōngānjú
bùxínglè
hǎijūnbù
xīngqǐrì
diàndēngpàor
guā tài kǔ
nàme zuò hǎo

shāngchuán
zhǎo wǔjiàn shí
chuān píkù
qízhe qiáng
shuōmíngshū
yě shuō bā
wàngyuǎnjìng
kān háizi
yānghuòdiàn
jiàshíyuán
xiězìzhuōr
shuǐ hěn xián
zěnme dōu xíng

PART IV
CHECKLIST OF CHINESE SYLLABLES

The number of elements of a Chinese syllable cannot be higher than three:

1. A final or ending sound
2. An initial or beginning sound
3. A tone or tonal inflection

Finals A final may be a vowel, a consonant, or a combination of vowel-plus-vowel or vowel-plus-consonant. Finals may also constitute complete syllables. The following is a list of finals met in the standard Mandarin Chinese of the capital.

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Example</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
a	as in <u>father</u> , or <u>ma</u> , with mouth wide open	mǎ	horse
an	between <u>o</u> in <u>John</u> and <u>a</u> in <u>an</u> , but closer to <u>o</u>	màn	be slow
ang	like <u>a</u> in <u>father</u> plus <u>ng</u> in <u>song</u>	máng	be busy
ai	as in <u>aisle</u>	mài	sell
ao	as in <u>how</u>	māo	cat
ar	as in <u>ar</u> in <u>car</u>	wár	to play
e	like <u>o</u> in <u>done</u> after <u>y</u> like <u>e</u> in <u>yet</u>	dé	obtain
o	like <u>o</u> in <u>worn</u>	wǒ	I
en	like <u>un</u> in <u>under</u>	kěn	be willing to
eng	like <u>ung</u> in <u>lung</u>	lěng	be cold
ei	as in <u>eight</u>	lèi	be tired
ou	as in <u>low</u>	lóu	building
er	like <u>er</u> in <u>her</u>	èr	two
i	as in <u>machine</u>	pí	skin
in	as in <u>pin</u>	pīn	spell out
ing	as in <u>sing</u>	píng	be level

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Example</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
u	like <u>u</u> in <u>super</u>	wú	cry
ong	like <u>oo</u> in <u>loot</u> plus <u>ng</u> in <u>song</u>	lóng	dragon
umlaut ü	made with tongue in position of <u>i</u> (as in machine) but with lips rounded. Like French <u>ü</u> or German <u>ü</u> .	yú	fish
umlaut ün	sound described above plus an <u>n</u>	yùn	to ship

Initials - An initial may be a single consonant or a consonant cluster.

p	as in <u>pun</u> , but with a strong puff of breath	pén	basin
b	like <u>p</u> in <u>spun</u> , without any breath after it	běn	volume
t	as in <u>tongue</u> , but with a strong puff of breath	téng	ache
d	like <u>t</u> in <u>stung</u> , without any breath after it	dēng	lamp
k	as in <u>cool</u> , but with a strong puff of breath	kū	to cry
g	like <u>c</u> in <u>scoop</u> , without any breath after it	gù	to hire
m	as in <u>month</u>	mén	door
n	as in <u>none</u>	néng	be able to
f	as in <u>fun</u>	fēn	to divide
l	as in <u>lung</u>	lěng	be cold
h	as a strong <u>h</u> sound in <u>hot</u> when said emphatically (like German <u>ch</u> as in <u>ach</u>)	hú	lake
y	as in <u>yet</u>	yě	also
w	as in <u>weigh</u>	wèi	to feed

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Example</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
r	(1) tongue position is like English "r", but with lips <u>spread</u> , not rounded.	rén	man
	(2) pronounced with tongue held in position until tone has been completed.	rì	sun
sh	A "sh" sound made with tongue curled back, (similar to <u>ch</u> , <u>zh-</u> , and <u>r-</u>).	shū	book
		shí	ten
ch	(1) similar to <u>ch</u> in "church" but with tip of tongue curled back as for <u>r</u> in " <u>true</u> "	chū	emerge
	(2) pronounced with tip of tongue held as described in (1) and held there until the tone has been completed.	chī	to eat
zh	like <u>ch</u> above but without a puff of breath.	zhù	to dwell
	(1) tongue position same as in (1) under <u>ch</u> (2) same as in (2) under <u>ch</u>	zhǐ	paper
q	similar to English " <u>ch</u> " but tip of tongue is held against the gum ridge behind the front teeth.	qī qián qù quán	seven money to go altogether
j	same as <u>q</u> , but without a puff of breath	jī jiàn jù jué	chicken cheap sentence consider
x	similar to English " <u>sh</u> " but made with tip of tongue held against the gum ridge behind the front teeth.	xī	west
c	(1) like <u>ts</u> in <u>it's high</u> , but with a strong puff of breath	cài	vegetable
	(2) initial pronounced with tip of tongue held in position until tone has been completed	cà	occasion
z	(1) like dz in <u>cod's eye</u>	zài	again
	(2) same as in (2) under <u>c</u> group	zì	character
s	(1) as in <u>sight</u> (2) same as in (2) under <u>c</u> group	sài	to compete



DÌYÍKÈ - LESSON 1

DESCRIPTIVE SENTENCES

A. Duìhuà - Dialogue

Wáng: Nín hǎo a?	How do you do?
Lǐ: Hǎo. Nín hǎo a?	Fine. How are you?
Wáng: Hěn hǎo.	Very well.
Lǐ: Nǐ máng bumáng?	Are you busy?
Wáng: Bùmáng. Nǐ máng ma?	No, are you?
Lǐ: Wǒ hěn máng.	(Yes), I'm very busy.
Wáng: Nǐ búlèi ma?	Aren't you tired?
Lǐ: Wǒ hěn lèi. Nǐ lèi búlèi?	(Yes), I'm very tired. Are you?
Wáng: Bútài lèi.	Not too tired.

B. Shēngzì - Vocabulary

1. wǒ	PN: I, me
2. nǐ nín	PN: you (singular) (polite form)
3. tā	PN: he, she; him, her
4. wǒmen	PN: we, us
5. nǐmen	PN: you (plural)
6. tāmen	PN: they, them
7. gāo	SV: be tall, high
8. máng	SV: be busy
9. hǎo	SV: be good, well
10. lèi	SV: be tired weary
11. āi	SV: be short (in stature) be low (in elevation)
12. hěn bùhěn hěn bu-	A: very A: not very A: very un-

L. 1

Vocabulary (continued)

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| 13. tài | A: too, excessively |
| bútài | A: not too |
| tài bu- | A: decidedly not |
| 14. bù- (bú-) | A: not (prefix to V, SV, A) |
| 15. ma? | P: (interrogative final particle for yes-no questions. Neutral in tone.) |
| 16. a? | P: (interrogative final particle, used when answer is assumed. Neutral in tone.) |
| 17. shéi? | N: who? (question word only, never relative pronoun) |

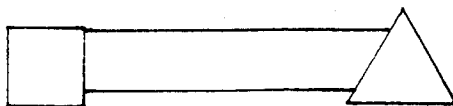
Kèshì Yòngyǔ - Classroom Phrases

Memorize these phrases and use them in class as opportunity offers. Don't try to analyze the sentence structure at this time.

Zǎo!	Good morning!
Zàijiàn!	Goodbye!

C. Jùzi Gòuzào - Sentence Structure

1. SIMPLE DESCRIPTION - The pattern of description consists of a subject followed by a stative verb.



Wǒ
(I

máng.
am busy.)

Tā
(He

búlèi.
is-not-tired.)

Pattern Drills

To understand the order of the elements which compose a sentence is not necessarily to be able to use it. Nothing can obviate the need for drill. Substitution Tables give a framework for individual drill by helping the student to ring the changes on basic patterns. Make every possible combination within the pattern set. Say the resultant sentences aloud several times.

a. Substitution Table: Statements

N	(neg.)	SV
Wǒ	(bu-)	gāo
Nǐ (nín)		máng
Tā		hǎo
Wǒmen		lèi
Nǐmen		ǎi
Tāmen		

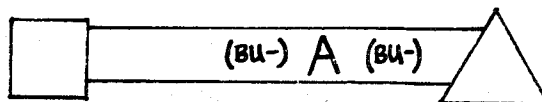
b. Substitution Table: Two-clause Statements (positive-negative)

N	SV,	N	neg-SV
Wǒ	gāo,	tā	bùgāo.
Nǐ (nín)	máng,	wǒ	bùmáng.
Tā	hǎo,	nǐ	bùhǎo.
Wǒmen	lèi,	nǐmen	búlèi.
Nǐmen	ǎi,	tāmen	bùǎi.
Tāmen		wǒmen	

c. Substitution Table: Two-clause Statements (negative-positive)

N	neg-SV,	N	SV
Wǒ	bùgāo,	tāmen	gāo.
Nǐ (nín)	bùmáng,	tā	máng.
Tā	bùhǎo,	nǐ	hǎo.
Wǒmen	búlèi,	nǐmen	lèi.
Nǐmen	bùǎi,	wǒ	ǎi.
Tāmen	bùgāo,	nǐmen	gāo.

2. DESCRIPTIVE STATEMENTS WITH ADVERBIAL MODIFIERS - Adverbs (A) precede verbs. Their function, as in English, is to modify verbs and other adverbs. The negative prefix bù- may be treated as an adverb and be attached to a verb or to an adverb. Hence we must distinguish between bùhěn hǎo 'not very well' and hěn bùhǎo 'very un-well'.



Tā
(She)

hěn gāo.
is very tall.)

Wǒ
(I)

bùhěn máng.
am not very busy.)

Tā
(He)

hěn bùhǎo.
is very bad.)

Wǒ
(I)

bútài ǎi.
am not too short.)


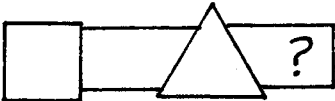
Pattern Drillsa. Substitution Table: Positive Statements

N	A	SV
Wǒ	hěn	gāo.
Nǐ (Nín)	tài	máng.
Tā		hǎo.
Wǒmen		lèi.
Nǐmen		ǎi.
Tāmen		


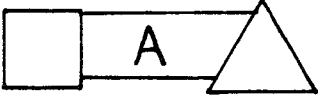
b. Substitution Table: Negative Statements

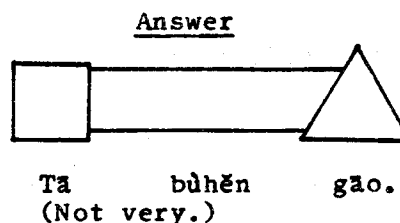
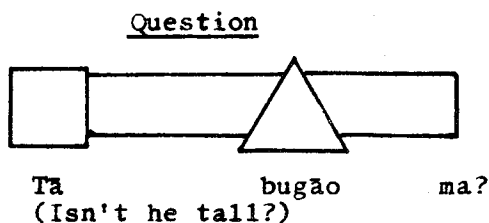
N	neg-A	SV
Wǒ	bùhěn	gāo.
Nǐ (Nín)	bútài	máng.
Tā		hǎo.
Wǒmen		lèi.
Nǐmen		ǎi.
Tāmen		

3. SIMPLE QUESTIONS - Questions to which the answer in English would be yes or no may be formed from any statement by adding the interrogative particle ma. The word order is not changed. The negative form of such a question differs from the positive form only by the use of the negative prefix before the verb.

<u>Statement</u>	<u>Question</u>
 <p>Tā máng. (He is busy.)</p> <p>Wǒ hěn ǎi. (I am very short.)</p>	 <p>Tā máng ma? (Is he busy?)</p> <p>Wǒ hěn ǎi ma? (Am I very short?)</p>

In answering questions, the same changes in personal pronouns are necessary as in English.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
 <p>Nǐ lèi ma? (Are you tired?)</p> <p>Nín máng a? (Are you busy?)</p>	 <p>Wǒ hěn lèi. (Yes, I am very tired.)</p> <p>(Wǒ) bùmáng. (No, I'm not.)</p>



Pattern Drills

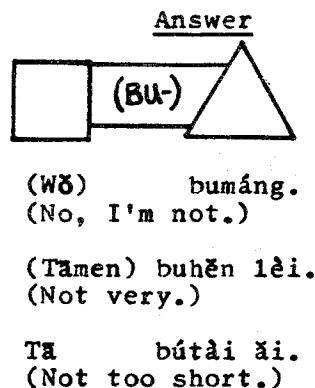
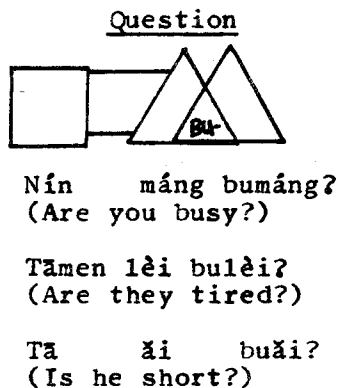
a. Substitution Table: Simple Questions

N	(neg-)	SV	?
Wǒ	(bu-)	gāo	ma?
Nǐ (Nín)		máng	
Tā		hǎo	
Wǒmen		lèi	
Nǐmen		ǎi	
Tāmen			

b. Substitution Table: Modified Questions

N	(neg-)	A	SV	?
Wǒ	(bu-)	hěn	gāo	ma?
Nǐ (Nín)		tài	máng	
Tā			hǎo	
Wǒmen			lèi	
Nǐmen			ǎi	
Tāmen				

4. CHOICE TYPE QUESTIONS - Coupling the positive and negative forms of a verb poses two alternatives and asks which is the case. The stress falls on the first or positive verb. The interrogative particle ma is not used in a choice type question.



Pattern Drillsa. Substitution Table: Choice Type Questions

Wǒ	gāo bugāo?
Nǐ	máng bumáng?
Nín	hǎo buhǎo?
Tā	lèi bulèi?
Wǒmen	ǎi buǎi?
Nǐmen	
Tāmen	

5. SHORT ANSWERS - Answers to questions calling for yes or no answers are formed by repeating the verb of the question in its positive or negative form. The inclusion of elements other than the verb is optional. In short answers the subject is frequently omitted. Since Chinese has no terms quite corresponding to 'yes' and 'no' in English, assent and dissent are expressed by repetition of the verb. The negative is indicated by prefixing bù- to the verb. E.g.:

<u>Question:</u>	Nǐ máng ma?	Are you busy?
<u>Answers:</u>	Máng.	Yes.
	Bumáng.	No.
	Bùhěn máng.	Not very busy.

<u>Question:</u>	Tā lèi bulèi.	Is she tired?
<u>Answers:</u>	Lèi.	Yes.
	Búlèi.	No.
	Bútài lèi.	Not too tired.

Pattern Drillsa. Substitution Table - Question and Answer: Simple

<u>Question</u>				<u>Answer</u>		
Wǒ	(hěn)	gāo	ma?	Wǒ	(hěn)	gāo.
Nǐ	(tài)	máng		Nǐ	(tài)	máng.
Nín	(bu-)	hǎo		Nín	(bu-)	hǎo.
Tā		lèi		Tā		lèi.
Wǒmen		ǎi		Wǒmen		ǎi.
Nǐmen				Nǐmen		
Tāmen				Tāmen		

b. Substitution Table - Question and Answer: Choice type

Wǒ	gāo bugāo?	
Nǐ	máng bumáng?	
Nín	hǎo buhǎo?	(same as above)
Tā	lèi bulèi?	
Wǒmen	ǎi buǎi?	
Nǐmen		
Tāmen		

Zhù jiě - Notes1. PARTS OF SPEECH

- 1.1 Nouns and Pronouns function essentially like their counterparts in English, except that they are not inflected for case or number. An exception may be found in the addition of -men to the singular pronouns to form plurals. This is limited to the pronouns and a very small number of personal nouns.
- 1.2 Verbs (V) in Chinese are words which may take a negative prefix. Chinese verbs are not inflected as are English verbs. One verb form is used regardless of person, number or tense, giving an effect similar to 'I be, he be, you be, we be' etc. There are several types of verbs, but only one, the stative verb, is introduced in this lesson.
- 1.3 Stative Verbs (SV). Most Chinese verbs fall into one of two categories: those which may be preceded by the adverb hěn 'very' and those which may not. The former are known as STATIVE VERBS because they describe a quality or condition rather than indicate an action. In English this function of describing is performed by an adjective preceded by the verb 'to be'. In Chinese the sense of 'to be' is embedded in the stative verb; hence there is no counterpart of 'to be' needed. E.g.: gāo means not merely 'tall' but 'is tall', and is a complete predicate, as the corresponding adjective in English is not.
- 1.4 Particles (P) are elements which may be added to a word, phrase or sentence to indicate some particular function or aspect. The pluralizing particle -men is added to pronouns and a few nouns denoting persons and is comparable to the English plural endings -s and -es. There are several interrogative particles which may be added to a statement to form a question. Such as ma? and a?
- 1.5 Adverbs, as in English modify verbs and other adverbs. An adverb in Chinese precedes the word it modifies.

2. TONE CHANGES

- 2.1 Tones on bu-. The negative prefix bu- is normally pronounced with the falling tone except when it is immediately followed by another falling tone, in which case it changes to the rising tone. E.g.: bùgāo, bùmáng, bùhǎo, but búlǎi. In rapid speech the tone of bu- is seldom identifiable unless stressed. Hence we shall omit the tone-mark from bu- unless stressed.
- 2.2 Successive Low Tones. When one low tone is immediately followed by another low tone, the former rises to approximate the rising tone. Thus, nǐ hǎo is pronounced approximately as if it were written ní hǎo. When three low tones occur in sequence, there are two possible patterns for pronunciation:

Nǐ hěn hǎo may be pronounced: Ní hén hǎo.
or: Nǐ hén hǎo.

L. 1

2.2 Successive Low Tones (continued)

The first pattern stresses both nǐ and hěn; the second stresses only hěn. If more than three low tones occur in sequence the most common pattern alternates low and rising tones, but this may be modified by a desire to stress some particular word or words.

Tone Change Drills

- a. Repeat the following phrases over and over, building up as much speed as possible:

Tā buǎi, bugāo, bumáng, búlèi.
Nǐ bǔhěn gāo, bǔhěn ǎi.
Nǐmen hěn hǎo; tāmen hěn bǔhǎo.
Nǐ hěn hǎo; wǒ bǔhěn hǎo.

- b. Pyramid Drill on Tones - Start with the basic essentials of a sentence, or even with a single word, and build up the expression by adding words to it.

hǎo
hěn hǎo
Nǐ hěn hǎo
Nǐ hěn hǎo ma?

bǔhǎo
bǔhěn hǎo
Tāmen bǔhěn hǎo
Tāmen bǔhěn hǎo ma?

bǔhǎo
hěn bǔhǎo
Tā hěn bǔhǎo
Tā hěn bǔhǎo ma?

E. Liànxí - Exercises

1. Answer these questions:

Tā máng ma?
Nǐ lèi búlèi?
Tāmen búlèi ma?
Tā tài gāo ma?
Wǒ hěn ǎi ma?

Nǐ hěn lèi ma?
Nǐ hǎo ma?
Nǐmen máng bumáng?
Tāmen búlèi ma?
Nǐmen bǔhěn máng ma?

2. Translate into Chinese:

He is tall.
Am I short?
Are you very tired?
Are they too tall?
We are not too tired?

We are tired.
They aren't busy.
Aren't they busy?
He isn't very well.
Is he tall or isn't he?

DĪÈKÈ - LESSON 2

F U N C T I V E S E N T E N C E SA. Duìhuà - Dialogue

Mǎi Bǐ - Buying a Pen

- | | |
|--|--|
| Wáng: Nǐ mǎi bào ma? | Are you buying a paper? |
| Lǐ: Wǒ bù mǎi bào. | No, I'm not. |
| Wáng: Nǐ bú kàn bào ma? | Don't you read the news-
paper? |
| Lǐ: Bú kàn. Wǒ kàn shū. | No, I read books. |
| Wáng: Nǐ mǎi shū ma? | Are you buying a book? |
| Lǐ: Bù mǎi. Shū tài guǐ. | No, books are too expensive. |
| Nǐ men mài bǐ ma? | Are you selling pens? |
| Wáng: Mài. Nǐ yào Měiguó
bǐ buyào? | Yes. Do you want an
American pen? |
| Lǐ: Měiguó bǐ dōu hǎo kàn ma? | Are all American pens good-
looking? |
| Wáng: Dōu hěn hǎo kàn. | They are all very good-
looking. |
| Lǐ: Guǐ bú guǐ? | Are they expensive? |
| Wáng: Bù dōu guǐ. Zhōngguó bǐ
piányi. | Not all. Chinese pens are
cheaper. |
| Lǐ: Wǒ bú yào wàiguó bǐ; wǒ
yào Zhōngguó bǐ. | I don't want a foreign pen;
I want a Chinese pen, |
| Wáng: Nǐ yào gāngbǐ, yào qiānbǐ,
yào fěnbǐ? | Do you want a pen, a pencil
or a crayon? |
| Lǐ: Wǒ yào gāngbǐ, yě yào
qiānbǐ, bú yào fěnbǐ. | I want a pen and a pencil,
but no crayons. |
| Wáng: Wǒ men yě mài zhōng,
yě mài biǎo. Nǐn yào bú yào? | We sell clocks and watches
too. Do you want any? |
| Lǐ: Wǒ bú yào. | I don't want any. |

B. Shēngzì - Vocabulary

18. shū

N: book

Shū hǎo.
(books are good.)

Wǒ kàn shū.
(I read books.)

19. bào

N: newspaper

Nín kàn bào ma?
(Do you read the newspaper?)

Bào tài guì.
(The paper is too expensive.)

20. bǐ
gāngbǐ
qiānbǐ
fěnbǐ

N: writing instrument

N: (steel) pen

N: lead pencil

N: chalk

Wǒ yào gāngbǐ, bùyào fěnbǐ.
(I want a pen, not a crayon.)

Fěnbǐ piányi; qiānbǐ guì.
(Chalk is cheap; pencils are more expensive.)

21. zhōng

N: clock, timepiece

22. biǎo

N: watch

Wǒ bùyào zhōng; wǒ yào biǎo.
(I don't want a clock; I want a watch.)

23. Zhōngguó

PW: China, Chinese (adj.)

24. Měiguó

PW: America (U.S.A.), American (adj.)

25. wàiguo

PW: foreign land, foreign (adj.)

Wǒ bùyào wàiguo bào; wǒ kàn Zhōngguó bào.
(I don't read foreign papers, I read Chinese papers.)

26. hǎokàn

SV: be good-looking

Měiguó biǎo hěn hǎokàn.
(American watches are very good-looking.)

Wàiguo zhōng bùtài hǎokàn.
(Foreign clocks are not too good-looking.)

27. guì

SV: be expensive

27. guì (continued)

Biǎo dōu guì ma?
(Are all watches expensive?)

Biǎo guì; zhōng buguì.
(Watches are expensive; clocks aren't.)

28. piányi

SV: be inexpensive, cheap

Zhōngguó shū piányi; wàiguó shū guì.
(Chinese books are cheap; foreign books
are expensive.)

29. yào
yào kǎn

V/AV: want, want to
AV-V: want to read

Nǐ yào bǎo ma? Wǒ búyào.
(Do you want a paper? No.)

Nǐ yào kǎn bǎo ma?
(Do you want to read the paper?)

30. mǎi

V: buy

Tā mǎi bumǎi? Mǎi.
(Is he buying it? Yes.)

31. mài

V: sell

Nǐ mài bumài? Búmài.
(Will you sell it? No.)

Wǒ bumǎi shū, wǒ mài shū.
(I don't buy books, I sell them.)

32. kàn

V: look, look at, read

Nǐ kàn! (Look!)

Nǐ kàn tā! (Look at him!)

Tā kàn bǎo. (He reads the paper.)

33. dōu
dōu bù-
budōu

A: all, both; altogether
A: none
A: not all

Wǒmen dōu tài máng.
(We are all too busy.)

Tāmen dōu búlèi.
(None of them are tired.)

Wǒmen budōu mǎi biǎo.
(Not all of us are buying watches.)

Substitution Drill

N		V	modifier	N
wǒ	(bu-)	yào	Zhōngguó	shū
nǐ (nín)		mǎi	Měiguó	bào
tā		mǎi	wàiguó	bǐ
wǒmen		kàn		gāngbǐ
nimen		yào mǎi		qiānbǐ
tāmen		yào mǎi		fěnbǐ
		yào kàn		zhōng
				biǎo

2. SIMPLE QUESTIONS in Functionive Sentences occur in a pattern similar to that used in the Descriptive Sentence. (See Lesson 1) It is formed by adding the interrogative particle ma to the end of a statement.

Statement

Tā kàn shū.
(He reads books.)

Tāmen dōu mǎi bǐ.
(They are all buying pens.)

Question

Tā kàn shū ma?
(Does he read books?)

Tāmen dōu mǎi bǐ ma?
(Are they all buying pens?)

Substitution Drill

N	V	N	P?
Wǒ	yào	shū	ma?
NI	mǎi	bào	
Tā	mǎi	bǐ	
Wǒmen	kàn	qiānbǐ	
Nimen		gāngbǐ	
Tāmen		fěnbǐ	
		zhōng	
		biǎo	

3. QUESTION WORD QUESTIONS. We found in Lesson 1 that we could slip a question word - shéi? - into the subject position before a stative verb. With functionive verbs there arises the possibility that the question word may be either subject or object. In English we transpose the statement pattern to get the question pattern. In Chinese the same pattern is used for both statement and question. Consequently the question word simply takes the place of whatever word is needed to answer the question. Thus:



Shéi
(Who is buying a pen?)

mǎi

bǐ?

NI
(What are you buying?)

mǎi

shénme?

L. 2

Tā kàn shéi?
(At whom is he looking?)

Nǐ yào shénme shū?
(What book do you want?)

Substitution Drill

a. Shéi as subject:

<u>QW</u>	<u>(neg-)</u>	<u>V</u>	<u>N</u>
Shéi	(bu-)	gāo máng hǎo lèi	?
		yào mǎi mài kàn	shū ? bào bǐ zhōng biǎo

b. Shénme as Subject:

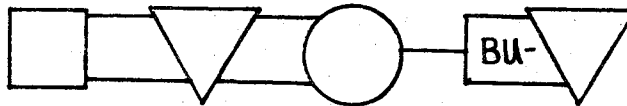
<u>QW</u>	<u>(N)</u>	<u>SV</u>	<u>?</u>
Shénme	(shū) (bào) (bǐ) (zhōng) (biǎo)	hǎo guì piányi hǎokǎn	?

c. Shénme as Object:

<u>N</u>	<u>V</u>	<u>QW</u>	<u>(N)</u>	<u>?</u>
Wǒ Nǐ (Nín) Tā Wǒmen Nǐmen Tāmen	yào mǎi mài kàn	shénme	(shū) (bào) (bǐ) (zhōng)	?

4. CHOICE TYPE QUESTIONS offer the listener two choices, with the implied question: Which is the case? The alternatives offered may be of several kinds:

4.1 Positive or Negative of the same verb and same object (if any). The positive form of the verb is followed immediately by the negative form. An object (if expressed) usually stands after the positive verb only, although less commonly it appears after the negative verb, or even after both verbs.



Nǐ kàn bào bukàn?
(Do you read the newspaper?) - (or don't you?)

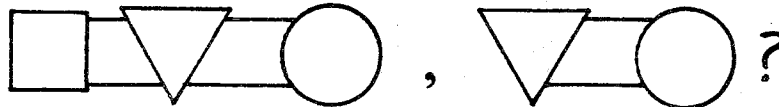
Tāmen yào Zhōngguó bǐ bùyào?
(Do they want Chinese pens?)

Tā mǎi zhōng bumǎi?
(Is he buying a clock?)

Substitution Drill

N	V	N	neg-V	?
Wǒ	kàn	bào	búkàn	?
Nǐ	mǎi	shǔ	bùmǎi	?
Tā	mǎi	bǐ	búmǎi	?
Wǒmen	yào	zhōng	bùyào	?
Nǐmen		biǎo		
Tāmen				

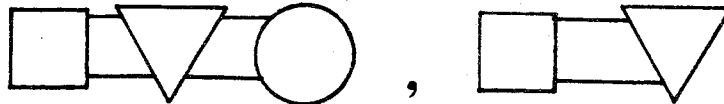
- 4.2 Choice between two predicates, in which the verb, the object, or both verb and object may differ. While in English we merely add an alternative object, in Chinese repetition of the verb is essential.



Nǐ mǎi zhōng, mǎi biǎo?
(Are you buying a clock or a watch?)

Tā yào qiānbǐ, yào fěnbǐ?
(Does he want a pencil or a crayon?)

- 4.3 Choice between two subjects. Alternative subjects may be used with both stative and functive verbs.



Nǐ mǎi, wǒ mǎi?
(Are you buying it, or am I?)

Tā gāo, wǒ gāo?
(Is he the taller, or am I?)

Zhōng piányi, biǎo piányi?
(Are clocks or watches less expensive?)

L. 2

5. THE ADVERB DOU - It should be noted that dōu is a fixed adverb, standing immediately before the verb it modifies. It cannot be separated from the verb by the subject, but it may be separated by another adverb. Dōu is peculiar in that, so far as meaning is concerned, it refers back to a plural thing or things previously mentioned. In the pattern N dōu V, it can be translated into English as "all of N V".

E.g.:

Tāmen dōu hěn gāo. All of them are very tall.
(They are all very tall.)

Pattern Drills

a. Substitution Table - Descriptive Sentences

<u>Plural N</u>		<u>SV</u>
Wǒmen	dōu	gāo
Nǐmen		máng
Tāmen		hǎo
Bǐ		lèi
Shū		hǎokàn
Bào		
Biǎo		
Zhōng		

b. Substitution Table - Functive Sentences

<u>Plural N</u>		<u>V</u>	<u>N</u>
Wǒmen	dōu	yào	bǐ
Nǐmen		kàn	shū
Tāmen		mǎi	bào
		mǎi	zhōng
			biǎo

- 5.1 DOU AND BU- IN SERIES. The two combinations dōu bu- and budōu differ markedly in meaning, the former translating literally as "all not" and the latter as "not all". This may be further illustrated as follows:

<u>Chinese</u>		<u>English</u>	
dōu bu-	<u>N dōu bu V</u>	<u>None of N</u>	<u>V</u>
	Tāmen dōu bugāo.		None of them is tall.
	Tāmen dōu bumǎi.		None of them buys (any).
budōu	<u>N budōu V</u>	<u>Not all of N</u>	<u>V</u>
	Tāmen budōu gāo.		Not all of them are tall.
	Tāmen budōu mǎi.		Not all of them buy (it).

Pattern Drillsa. Substitution Table - dōu bu-

N	dōu	bu-V
Wōmen	dōu	búlài.
Nimen		bugāo.
Tāmen		bumáng.
Bǐ		bumǎi.
Bào		búmǎi.
Shū		búyào.
Zhōng		buhǎokàn.
Biǎo		búguì.
		bupiányi.

b. Substitution Table - budōu

N	budōu	V
Wōmen	budōu	lài.
Nimen		gāo.
Tāmen		máng.
Bǐ		guì.
Shū		piányi.
Zhōng		hǎokàn.
Biǎo		mǎi.
Bào		mǎi.
		kàn.

6. CONNECTIVES - In English the conjunctions and and but are used rather indiscriminately to join various parts of speech to other members of the same category. In Chinese most connectives are adverbs and can therefore be used only between verbs; hence they cannot join two nouns. Thus these adverbial connectives introduce clauses. Basically no connective is required between two predicates.

6.1 Two objects - Where in English two or more objects follow a single verb, in Chinese the verb is repeated with each object. (The subject need not be repeated.) Connectives are not required.

Tā kàn shū, kàn bào. He reads books and newspapers.
Wǒ mǎi zhōng, mǎi biǎo. I am buying clocks and watches.

6.2 Double Predicates - positive-negative



Wǒ kàn shū, búkàn bào.
(I read books but not newspapers.)

Wǒ mǎi shū, bùmǎi shū.
(I buy books but don't sell them.)

Rhythm Drill

Repeat the following double predicate sentences aloud several times to get the balanced rhythm of the pattern.

Wǒ yào zhōng, búyào biǎo.
Nǐ mǎi qiānbǐ, bùmǎi gāngbǐ.
Tā mǎi bào, bùmǎi shū.
Wōmen mǎi bǐ, bùmǎi bǐ.
Nimen kàn shū, bùmǎi shū.
Tāmen yào mǎi biǎo, búyào mǎi zhōng.

L. 2

6.3 CONNECTIVE ADVERB YĚ - Used singly, yě has the force of too or also, but is sometimes better rendered as and. Used in multiple to introduce a series of clauses, it has the value of both...and (in the negative, neither...nor.)

Wǒ kàn shū, yě kàn bào. I read books and newspapers too.

Wǒ bùxǐhuan zhōng, yě
bùxǐhuan biǎo, yě
bùxǐhuan bǐ. I don't like clocks, watches, or pens.

Tā yě kàn shū, yě kàn bào. He reads both books and newspapers.

Tā yě bùkàn shū, yě bùkàn bào. He reads neither books nor newspapers.

The pattern yě...yě requires that both clauses be positive or both clauses be negative.

Substitution Drill

<u>N</u>	<u>A</u>	<u>V</u>	,	<u>N</u>	<u>A</u>	<u>V</u>
Wǒ	yě (bu-)	máng		Nǐ	yě (bu-)	máng.
Nǐ		hǎo		Tā		lèi.
Tā		gāo		Wǒ		hǎo.
Wǒmen		lèi		Tāmen		gāo.
Nǐmen		guì		Wǒmen		piányi.
Tāmen		piányi		Nǐmen		guì.
Shū		hǎokàn		Bào		hǎokàn.
Bào				Shū		
Zhōng				Biǎo		
Biǎo				Zhōng		

D. Zhùjiě - Notes

1. CHINESE NOUNS differ from English nouns in certain respects:

1.1 They are not inflected to show number. They stand for generalized concepts such as paper, grain, or tea in English. Hence shū may mean 'books', or 'a book'; bǐ may mean 'pens' or 'a pen', etc.

1.2 They modify other nouns. One noun may be placed before another noun to modify it. (Exceptions to this principle will be noted in Lesson 3). The same principle appears in English to a limited extent in such expressions as:

country store	school janitor
city street	town crier

The Chinese language, instead of doctoring a noun by adding an adjectival ending, simply uses one noun to modify another:

Zhōngguo bǐ
Měiguó bào
wàiguó shū

Chinese pen
American newspaper
foreign book

2. COORDINATE NOUNS. Position does not necessarily indicate modification. Certain cognate nouns are commonly coupled in a coordinate rather than a subordinate relation. (Compare English: knives and forks, tables and chairs.) No connective is required.

Nǐ wǒ dōu mǎi Zhōngguó shū.
(You and I are both buying Chinese books.)

Tā mǎi shū bào.
(He sells books and newspapers.)

Zhuōzi yīzi dōu hěn guì.
(The tables and chairs are both very expensive.)

Note that when the coordinate pair or group stands before the verb, it is followed by dōu which has a totalizing effect; when they follow the verb, dōu is not used because dōu can refer in meaning only to something which precedes it.

3. CHINESE HAS NO NEUTER PRONOUN to correspond with 'it'. In translating from English to Chinese, 'it' is usually omitted:

It isn't expensive.	Búguì.
I don't want it.	Wǒ búyào.
Will you sell it?	Nǐ mǎi búmài?

4. FUNCTIVE VERBS express action or occurrence. They may be used transitively or intransitively. Like stative verbs, they are not inflected for person, number, or tense. Hence,

Wǒ mǎi bào.	I (customarily) buy newspapers.
	I am buying a newspaper.
	I bought a newspaper.
	I am going to buy a newspaper.

(Means of distinguishing these aspects will be given later.)

- 4.1 Auxiliary Verbs, as in English, are usually merely a specialized use of some ordinary verb by which it may be followed by another verb and its object. Thus we can say:

Nǐ yào bǐ ma?	Do you want a pen?
Nǐ yào mǎi bǐ ma?	Do you want to buy a pen?

- 4.2 Reduplication. Verbs are frequently reduplicated, especially in commands and requests. This may suggest a mere sampling of the action or a prolongation of the action. It translates most readily into English in the pattern: "Take a look." Sometimes the NU yí is inserted between the two verbs.

L. 2

Nǐ kànkàn wǒde biǎo.
Wǒ xiǎngxiang ba.
Nǐ wènwen Zhāng Tàitai.

Take a look at my watch.
Let me think (it over).
Ask Mrs. Zhāng.

5. ANSWERING ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS - A question offering two alternatives for your choice may draw various answers. Most common are:

Question: Nǐ kàn shū, kàn bào? Do you read books or newspapers?

<u>Answers:</u>	Wǒ kàn shū.	I read books.
	Wǒ kàn bào.	I read newspapers.
	Wǒ kàn shū, búkàn bào.	I read books (but) not newspapers.
	Wǒ dōu kàn.	I read both.
	Wǒ dōu búkàn.	I read neither.

Take each of the following alternative type questions and see how many different answers you can make up.

Nǐ hǎokàn, tā hǎokàn?
Nǐ kàn tā, kàn wǒ?
Tā mǎi shū, mǎi bào?
Zhōng piányi, biǎo piányi?
Tā gāo, nǐ gāo?
Nǐ mǎi Zhōngguo zhōng, mǎi wàiguó zhōng?
Nǐ mǎi bǐ bumǎi?
Shū guì buguì?

E. Liànxí - Exercises

1. Pyramid Drills

1.1

shū
kàn shū
yào kàn shū
yào kàn Měiguó shū
tā yào kàn Měiguó shū ma?
tā búyào kàn Měiguó shū ma?
tā yào kàn Měiguó shū búyào kàn?

bǐ
Zhōngguó bǐ
Zhōngguó bǐ guì.
Zhōngguó bǐ búguì.
Zhōngguó bǐ bùhěn guì.
Zhōngguó bǐ hěn búguì.
Zhōngguó bǐ bùhěn guì ma?
Zhōngguó bǐ dōu bùhěn guì ma?
Wǒde Zhōngguó bǐ bùdōu hěn guì

2. Substitution Tables - Modifiers

2.1	Modifier	N	(dǒu)	(neg-)	SV
	Zhōngguo	bǐ	(dǒu)	(bu-)	guǐ
	Měiguó	zhōng			hǎo
	Wàiguó	biǎo			piányi
		shū			hǎokàn

2.2	N	D	(yào)	V	Modifier	N
	Wǒ	(bu-)	(yào)	mǎi	Zhōngguo	bǐ
	Nǐ	(yě)		mǎi	Měiguó	qiānbǐ
	Tā			kàn	wàiguó	gāngbǐ
	Wǒmen					shū
	Nǐmen					bào
	Tāmen					biǎo
						zhōng

3. Drills on Adverbs - Say these phrases aloud, translating them into English as you say them.

3.1	dōu	gāo	budōu	gāo	dōu	bugāo
		máng		máng		bumáng
		hǎo		hǎo		buhǎo
		lèi		lèi		búlèi
		guǐ		guǐ		búguǐ
		hǎokàn		hǎokàn		buhǎokàn
		ǎi		ǎi		buǎi

3.2	yě	gāo	yě	bugāo
		máng		bumáng
		hǎo		buhǎo
		lèi		búlèi
		guǐ		búguǐ
		hǎokàn		buhǎokàn
		ǎi		buǎi

3.3 Now combine these two patterns and run through all of your stative verbs on the pattern of each of the following sentences.

Nǐmen yě buhěn lèi ma?	Wǒmen yě buhěn lèi.
Tāmen yě dōu bugāo ma?	Tāmen yě dōu bugāo.
Tāmen yě budōu hǎo ma?	Tāmen yě budōu hǎo.

4. Translation. Cover the English renderings with a piece of paper and see if you can translate from Chinese into English. Then reverse the process and translate from English into Chinese.

- a. Nǐ mǎi shū ma? Wǒ bùmǎi shū. Are you buying a book? No, I'm not.
- b. Nǐmen yào bǐ buyào? Wǒmen yào bǐ. Do you want pens? Yes, we do.
- c. Wǒmen búkàn Zhōngguó bào. Wǒmen kàn Měiguó bào. We don't read Chinese papers. We read American papers.

L. 2

- d. Tāmen mài bào, búmài shū. They sell papers, not books.
- e. Nimen bumǎi Měiguo bǐ ma?
Wǒmen bumǎi Měiguo bǐ.
Měiguo bǐ tài guì. Aren't you buying an American pen?
No, we're not. They're too expensive.
- f. Nǐ búmài bǐ ma? Wǒ yào mǎi bǐ. Don't you sell pens? I want to buy a pen.
- g. Wǒ yào biǎo, wǒ buyào zhōng. I want a watch, not a clock.
Zhōng buhǎokàn. Clocks are ugly.
- h. Tāmen mǎi gāngbǐ ma? Bùmǎi. Are they buying pens? No, they are
Tāmen mǎi qiānbǐ, yě mǎi buying pencils and crayons.
fēnbǐ.
- i. Nǐ kàn Zhōngguo shū bukàn? Do you read Chinese books. No, I
Bukàn. don't.
- j. Tā mài wàiguo bǐ, búmài He sells foreign pens, not Chinese
Zhōngguo bǐ. pens.
- k. Wàiguo bào budǒu guì. Foreign newspapers are not all
expensive.
- l. Měiguo gāngbǐ piányi, Zhōngguo Are American pens or Chinese pens
gāngbǐ piányi? more expensive?
- m. Wǒmen budǒu yào wàiguo biǎo. Not all of us want foreign watches.

DÌSĀNKÈ - LESSON 3

INDIRECT OBJECT AND
TRANSPOSED OBJECT

A. Duihuà - Dialogue

NĪ Xǐhuan Shénme? - What do you like?

Péng: Wǒ yǒu sāngē zhōng. Wǒ gěi nǐ yíge. Nǐ yào bùyào?

Yáng: Wǒ bùyào, xièxie. Wǒ yě yǒu yíge.

Péng: Zhège Měiguó biǎo hěn hǎokàn. Nǐ xǐhuan buxǐhuan?

Yáng: Wǒ bú tài xǐhuan. Zhōng, biǎo, wǒ dōu buxǐhuan.

Péng: Nàge Měiguó gāngbǐ búguì. Wǒ yào mǎi yíge. Nǐ yǒu qián méiyǒu?

Yáng: Bié mǎi. Nàge gāngbǐ bùpiányi, yě bùhǎokàn. Měiguó bǐ bùdōu hǎokàn.

Péng: Nǐ yǒu qián ma? Nǐ gěi wǒ qián, wǒ yào mǎi yíge.

Yáng: Shéi gěi nǐ qián? Nǐ méi qián, bié mǎi.

Péng: Nǐ mǎi, hǎo buhǎo?

Yáng: Wǒ bumǎi. Měiguó zhōng tài guì, Zhōngguó zhōng yě tài guì. Biǎo yě buhǎokàn, bǐ yě buhǎokàn. Dōu tài guì, yě dōu buhǎokàn. Wǒ mǎi shénme?

Péng: Zhōng yě buhǎo, biǎo yě buhǎo. Zhège yě buhǎo, nàge yě buhǎo. Dōu buhǎo. Nǐ xǐhuan shénme?

Yáng: Wǒ dōu buxǐhuan.

Note: Translation appears in Section E - Exercises

B. Shēngzì - Vocabulary

36. zhuōzi	N: table
37. yǐzi	N: chair
38. dōngxi	N: thing, object
39. qián	N: money
40. yíge	NU-M: one (pure NU: yī)
41. liǎngge	NU-M: two (pure NU: èr)
42. sāngē	NU-M: three (pure NU: sān)
43. sìge	NU-M: four (pure NU: sì)

L. 3

44. wǔge	NU-M: five	(pure NU: wǔ)
45. liùge	NU-M: six	(pure NU: liù)
46. qīge	NU-M: seven	(pure NU: qī)
47. bāge	NU-M: eight	(pure NU: bā)
48. jiǔge	NU-M: nine	(pure NU: jiǔ)
49. shíge	NU-M: ten	(pure NU: shí)
50. jǐge?	NU-M: how many?	(not over ten)

Nǐ yào jǐge zhuōzi?
(How many tables do you want?)

Wǒ yào sānge (zhuōzi).
(I want three tables.)

Liǎngge hǎo, yíge bùhǎo.
(Two are good, one is bad.)

51. zhège	(SP-M)N: this, this one
52. nàge	(SP-M)N: that, that one
53. nǎge	(SP-M)N: which?, which one?

Tā yào nǎge?
(Which one does he want?)

Tā yào zhège bǐ.
(He wants this pen.)

Zhège yǐzi guì, nàge buguì.
(This chair is expensive, that one is not.)

54. gěi	V: give
---------	---------

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ yíge bǐ.
(Please give me a pen.)

Tā yǒu qián; tā bugěi wǒ.
(He has money; he won't give it to me.)

55. yǒu	V: have, possess (see note 1)
méiyǒu	V: have not (The negative for <u>yǒu</u> is <u>méi</u> , never <u>bù</u> -.)
méiyǒu	V: have not

Tā yǒu shū méiyǒu?
(Has she any books?)

Tā yǒu shū; wǒ mèiyǒu.
(He has some books; I haven't any.)

56. xièxie
búxiè
- V: thank, thanks, thank you
V: "don't mention it", "you're welcome"
(Lit: you need not thank me)
- Nǐ xièxie tā.
(Thank him!)
- Gěi nǐ zhège. Wǒ búyào, xièxie.
(I'll give you this. No, thanks.)
57. xǐhuan
xǐhuan kǎn
- V/AV: like, enjoy, like to
AV-V: like to read (See Lesson 2, Note 4.1)
- Wǒ hěn xǐhuan tā.
(I like him very much.)
- Tā xǐhuan kǎn bào.
(He likes to read the paper.)
58. gēn
- C: and (between nouns only)
- Wǒ mǎi shū gēn gāngbǐ.
(I'm buying a book and a pen.)
59. qǐng
qǐngwèn
- V: invite, request, please
Ph: may I inquire?
- Tāmen qǐng wǒ.
(They invited me.)
- Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ yìběn shū.
(Please give me a book.)
- Qǐngwèn, zhège yǐzi mǎi bumǎi?
(May I ask, is this chair for sale?)
60. bié
- AV: don't
- Nǐ bié gěi tā qián.
(Don't give him any money.)
- Bié mǎi!
(Don't buy it!)
61. hǎo buhǎo
- Ph: Wouldn't that be a good idea? How about it? (Used after a suggestion to ask approval.)
- Nǐ mǎi zhège, hǎo buhǎo?
(How about buying this one?)

Classroom Phrases

Búkèqi.

You're welcome!
(Lit: You needn't be polite!)

Dǎkai shū.

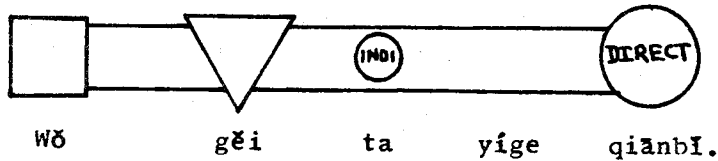
Open your book(s).

L. 3

Guānshang shū.	Close your book(s).
Bié kàn shū.	Don't look at your book(s).
Qǐng kàn shū.	Please look at your book(s).

C. Jùzi Gòuzào - Sentence Structure

1. INDIRECT OBJECT. An indirect object precedes a direct object as in the English sentence "He gives me money." Chinese does not use a pattern corresponding to "He gives the money to me."



Note that pronouns used as objects usually lose their tone unless emphasized. However, a low tone still affects another low tone immediately preceding it. Hence:

	Gěi tā shū.	Give him the book.
but	Géi wǒ bǐ.	Give me the pen.
	Qǐng tā shuō.	Ask him to say it.
but	Qǐng nǐ shuō.	Please say it.

Pattern Drill

a. Substitution Table

	N		V	Ind-O	Direct-O
	Shéi	(bu-)	gěi	wo	qián
	wǒ	yào	gěi	ni	shū
(Qǐng)	Nǐ			ta	bào
	Tā			women	bǐ
	wǒmen			nimen	qiānbǐ
(Qǐng)	Nimen			tamen	gāngbǐ
	Tāmen			shei	fěnbǐ
					zhōng
					biǎo

2. TRANSPOSITION OF OBJECT TO "TOPIC" POSITION. The object of a verb may be transposed to a position at the head of the sentence and in front of the subject, where it becomes the pre-stated topic-to-be-dealt-with. A similar pattern occurs in English when we say:

The taller man I don't recognize.
 The pie I don't care for, the cake I do.

This pattern is used much more frequently in Chinese than in English. The words so transposed may be a single word, a multiple object, or a noun with modifiers. The more heavily modified the object is, the more likely it is to be transposed.



Shū , wǒ kàn;
bào, wǒ búkàn.
(I read books but not newspapers.)

Shū, bào, wǒ dōu kàn.
(I read both books and newspapers.)

Zhōngguó bào, wǒ kàn.
(I read Chinese newspapers.)

Zhōng, biǎo, tā dōu mài.
shū, bǐ, tā dōu mài.
(He sells clocks, watches, books, pens - all of them.)

2.1 TRANSPOSITION REQUIRED. When dōu refers to the object, that object must be transposed to the topic position. When the subject is singular, dōu refers to the object. When the subject and object are both plural, only the context will tell you which is referred to.

Shū, wǒ dōu yào. I want all the books.

Shū, bào wǒmen dōu kàn. We read both books and papers.
Both of us read books and papers.

Pattern Drills

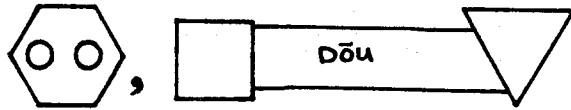
a. Substitution Table. Translate each sentence as you make it, noting particularly where the referent for dōu is ambiguous.

Mod.	N	,	N	dōu	V
Zhōngguó	qián		wǒ	dōu	kàn
Měiguó	zhuōzi		nǐ		mài
Wàiguó	yīzi		tā		mài
	zhōng		wǒmen		yào
	biǎo		nǐmen		yào mài
	bào		tāmen		xīhuan
	shū				xīhuan kàn
	dōngxi				yǒu

b. Make Sentences on these two patterns:



Shū, wǒ yào; bào, wǒ yě yào.
(I want books; I also want newspapers.)



Shū, bào wǒ dōu yào.
(I want all the books and newspapers.)

- c. Transposing Objects. Transpose the objects in the following sentences so that they appear at the beginning of the sentences as topics. Be sure to totalize where the object is plural or serial.

Wǒ mǎi shū, yě mǎi bào.
Tā gěi wǒ yíge zhuōzi, yě gěi wǒ liǎngge yǐzi.
Tāmen kàn Zhōngguó shū, yě kàn Zhōngguó bào.
Tā yào mǎi Měiguó bǐ, yě yào mǎi Zhōngguó bǐ.
Tāmen mǎi zhōng, bú mǎi biǎo.
Wǒmen kàn Zhōngguó bào, bú kàn Měiguó bào.
Nǐmen yǒu bǐ ma?
Tā gěi wǒ zhōng, bugěi wǒ biǎo.
Tā yě bugěi wǒmen zhuōzi, yě bugěi wǒmen qián.
Tāmen buxǐhuan Měiguó yǐzi, xǐhuan Zhōngguó yǐzi.

3. QUESTION WORD QUESTIONS. The introduction to two new question words - nǎge and jíge - gives further emphasis to the principle stated in Lesson 2 that the question word takes the same position as the word which answers the question. But the word order of the question is identical with the word order of the answer.

Nǐ yào <u>nǎge</u> bǐ?	(Which pen do you want?)
<u>Nǎge</u> yǐzi guì?	(Which chair is more expensive?)
Tā gěi nǐ <u>jíben</u> shū?	(How many books did he give you?)
Nǐ kàn <u>shénme</u> bào?	(What paper do you read?)
<u>Jíge</u> biǎo piányi,	(How many watches are cheap and how many are expensive?)
<u>jíge</u> biǎo guì?	

Pattern Drills

- a. Find the Question. Make up a question which would draw each of the following answers. (Beware the English habit of transposition in making questions!) Note that in some cases more than one question will draw forth the same answer - possibly differing in stress.

Tā yào mǎi yíge zhuōzi.
Tāmen dōu kàn Měiguó bào.
Nǐ yǒu qián.
Wǒ mǎi biǎo.
Tā bú yào zhège.
Nǎge bǐ hǎo, zhège bù hǎo.
Wǒmen dōu méiyǒu.
Tā yào mǎi.

- b. Fill in the blanks with appropriate question words.

Nǐ yǒu _____ zhuōzi?

_____ gěi nǐ qián?
 Nǐ kàn _____ bào?
 _____ yīzi piányi?
 Nàge gāngbǐ, nǐ gěi _____ ?
 Nǐ yào _____ Zhōngguo bǐ, _____ Měiguó bǐ?
 _____ mǎi zhōng?
 Tāmen dōu mǎi _____ dōngxi?

D. Zhùjiě - Notes

1. NEGATIVE MÉI. The verb yǒu 'have' takes méi- as its negative instead of bu-. Thus we say méiyǒu, never bùyǒu. Within a sentence, the pronunciation is normally méiyǒu (with stress on the first syllable); but at the end of a sentence the second syllable will come out clearly - méiyǒu. Méiyǒu within a sentence may be abbreviated to méi.
2. YÍGE, ZHÈGE, NÀGE, NĀGE are commonly used to modify a noun, but they may also stand as independent nouns with the sense 'one', 'this one', 'that one', 'which one?':

Modifier: Yíge bǐ hǎo; yíge bǐ bùhǎo.
 (One pen is good, one pen isn't.)

Independent: Yíge hǎo, yíge bùhǎo.
 (One is good, one isn't.)

Zhège hǎo, nàge bùhǎo.
 (This one is good, that one isn't.)

3. NUMBERS. Chinese numbers are found in two forms. The pure number is used for calling off, for counting from one to ten, for giving telephone numbers, and for mathematical purposes where only the bare number is required. These are given in the left-hand column below. If something is to be counted, however, the bare number will not do; it must be combined with the ending -ge. Moreover, while the bare number for "two" is èr, when counting things one must say liǎngge.

Bare Numbers

yī
 èr
 sān
 sì
 wǔ
 liù
 qī
 bā
 jiǔ
 shí

Counters for Things

yíge
 liǎngge
 sānge
 sìge
 wǔge
 liùge
 qīge
 bāge
 jiǔge
 shíge

- 3.1 Change of Tone on Certain Numbers and bu-. The number yī as used in calling off has the high level tone; when used to count things and consequently followed by a measure, it rises before a falling tone. Similarly the negative bu-. Qī and bā also change tone.

<u>Word</u>	<u>Standing Alone</u>	<u>Before High Tone</u>	<u>Before Rising Tone</u>	<u>Before Low Tone</u>	<u>Before Falling Tone</u>
one	yī	yībān	yīpén	yīběn	yīge yītàng
seven	qī	qībān	qīpén	qīběn	qīge qītàng
eight	bā	bābān	bāpén	bāběn	bāge bātàng
not	bù	bùgāo	bùmáng	bùhǎo	bùlèi búshì

4. SUFFIX -ZI. The suffix -zi, found on many nouns, is never stressed. In North China the pronunciation is usually closer to -ze than to -zi:

zhuōzi	pronounced	zhuōze
yīzi	pronounced	yīze

E. Liànxí - Exercises

1. Translation Exercise on Indirect Objects. Drill yourself on translating back and forth from Chinese to English and from English to Chinese. Cover up one side of the page at a time.
- Tā gěi wǒ bǐ. Wǒ xièxie tā. He gave me a pen. I thank him.
 - Tā méiyǒu qián. Wǒ yào gěi ta qián. He has no money. I want to give him (some) money.
 - Nǐmen gěi ta qián bùgěi? Are you (pl) giving him (some) money?
 - Tā yào Měiguó bǐ. Wǒ gěi ta Zhōngguó bǐ. He wants an American pen. I'm giving him a Chinese pen.
 - Wǒ yào gěi ta zhōng. Tā búyào zhōng, tā yào biǎo. I want to give him a clock. He doesn't want a clock, he wants a watch.
 - Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒmen bǐ, yě gěi wǒmen biǎo. Please give us (some) pens and watches.
 - Wǒ gěi ta zhōng, bùgěi nǐ zhōng. I'll give a clock to him, (but) not to you.

- h. Tā gěi wǒ shū, bùgěi wǒ bǐ. He gave me a book, (but) wouldn't give me a pen.
- i. Nǐ bùgěi tā qián ma? Aren't you giving him (any) money?

2. Translation Exercises on Transposed Objects

- a. Zhōngguó shū, Měiguó shū, wǒ dōu kàn. I read both Chinese and American books.
- b. Měiguó bǐ, Zhōngguó bǐ, wǒ dōu bùmǎi. I'm not buying either American or Chinese pens.
- c. Shū, bào, wǒ dōu yào mǎi. Bǐ, wǒ yě yào mǎi. I'm going to buy both books and papers. I'm going to buy a pen, too.
- d. Bào wǒ kàn, shū wǒ yě kàn. I read the papers; I read books too.
- e. Biǎo wǒ yào, kěshì zhōng wǒ búyào. I want a watch, but not a clock.
- f. Zhōngguó bào, nǐ kàn búkàn? Kàn. Do you read Chinese newspapers? Yes, I do.
- g. Zhōng, biǎo, wǒ dōu méiyǒu. I have neither clock nor watch.
- h. Bǐ, nǐmen dōu yǒu ma? Do you all have pens?
- i. Zhōngguó shū, nǐmen dōu yào kàn ma? Do you all want to read Chinese books?

3. Translation of the Dialogue - From this point on the translation of the dialogue in each lesson will be printed in Section E as an "exercise." After you have studied the dialogue both from the text and from a sound record, try to translate back from the English version below and see how close you can come to the Chinese version printed at the beginning of the lesson.

Péng: I have three clocks. I'll give you one. Do you want it?

Yáng: No thanks, I have one too.

Péng: This American watch is very good-looking. Do you like it?

Yáng: Not too well. I don't care for either clocks or watches.

Péng: That American pen isn't expensive. I'd like to buy one. Do you have any money?

Yáng: Don't buy it. That pen isn't cheap, nor is it good-looking. Not all American pens are good-looking.

Péng: Have you some money? Give me some money and I'll buy one.

Yáng: Who's giving you any money? If you haven't any money, don't buy it.

L. 3

Péng: How about you buying it?

Yáng: No, American clocks are too expensive, and so are Chinese clocks. Neither American watches nor Chinese watches are good-looking. They are all too expensive, and they aren't good-looking. What shall I buy?

Péng: Clocks are no good, and watches are no good. This is no good and that's no good. Nothing is any good. What do you like?

Yáng: I don't like any of them.

DÌSÌKÈ - LESSON 4

SPECIFIERS - NUMBERS - MEASURES

A. Duìhuà - Dialogue

Mǎi Huà - Buying Paintings

Wáng: Wǒ yǒu liǎngge hǎo péngyou. Yíge péngyou mǎi zhuōzi yīzi; yíge péngyou mǎi zhǐ, mǎi huà.

Lǐ: Wǒ wèn nǐ: Zhōngguó huà hǎokàn, Měiguó huà hǎokàn?

Wáng: Huà, wǒ bú tài dǒng; kěshì wǒ nage péngyou shuō: Yǒude Zhōngguó huà hǎo, yǒude wàiguó huà hǎo. Nín yě xǐhuan huà ma?

Lǐ: Duìle, wǒ yě xǐhuan huà. Yǒurén shuō Zhōngguó huà hǎo; yě yǒurén shuō wàiguó huà hǎo. Kěshì wǒ xǐhuan Měiguó huà.

Wáng: Wǒ yǒu sìzhāng Zhōngguó huà. Qǐng nǐ kànkàn nǎzhāng hǎo.

Lǐ: Zhè sìzhāng huà, liǎngzhāng dà, liǎngzhāng xiǎo. Zhèxiē huà, nǐ dōu mǎi ma?

Wáng: Búdōu mǎi.

Lǐ: Zhè liǎngzhāng zhēn hǎo. Nǐ mǎi bumǎi?

Wáng: Búmǎi. Wǒ yě xǐhuan zhè liǎngzhāng. Nà liǎngzhāng xiǎo huà, wǒ mǎi. Nín yào buyào?

Lǐ: Wǒ bú tài xǐhuan nà liǎngzhāng. Wǒ yào mǎi yìzhāng Měiguó huà. Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu?

Wáng: Měiguó huà, wǒ méiyǒu. Wǒ nage péngyou yǒu. Wǒ wènwen ta mǎi bumǎi.

Lǐ: Hǎo. Xièxie.

Wáng: Búxiè. Zài jiàn.

B. Shēngzì - Vocabulary

62. rén
dàrén

N: man, person, people
N: adult (See Voc. 80)

Nàge rén tài gāo ma?
(Is that man too tall?)

Tā shì Zhōngguó rén, búshì Měiguó rén.
(He is a Chinese, not an American.)

63. péngyou

N: friend

64. fùqin

N: father

- Nín xīhuan nǎzhāng huà?
(Which painting do you like?)
- Nǎzhāng Zhōngguó huà hěn piányi.
(That Chinese painting is very cheap.)
76. jǐ-
NU: how many? (Less than ten)
(See Voc. 50)
- Nǐ mǎi jǐge biǎo?
(How many watches are you buying?)
- Jǐge rén yǒu, jǐge rén méiyǒu?
(How many people have them and how many haven't?)
77. -gè
M: (general measure) (See Note and Voc. 36-53)
sānge rén (three people)
78. -běn
M: volume (measure for books)
sìběn shū (four books)
79. -zhāng
M: sheet (measure for paper, pictures, tables, etc.) (See Voc. 70-71)
- liùzhāng zhǐ (six sheets of paper)
liǎngzhāng huà (two pictures)
sānzhāng zhuōzi (three tables)
80. dà
SV: be large, big
81. xiǎo
SV: be small, little
- Zhège dà, nàge xiǎo.
(This is the larger, that is the smaller.)
- Wǒ yào mǎi yíge dà zhuōzi.
(I want to buy a big table.)
82. duì
duìle
SV: be right
SV: That's right!
- Duì buduì? Duìle.
(Is that right? That's right.)
- Tā shuō wǒ méiyǒu qián. Búduì. Wǒ yǒu qián.
(He says I haven't any money. Wrong. I have some.)
83. shuō
shuōshuo
V: say, say that
V: tell about it, talk about it
- Tā shuō shénme?
(What does he say?)

L. 4

- Tā shuō tā méiyǒu.
(He says that he hasn't any.)
84. wèn
wènwen V: inquire about, (ask)
V: make inquiries
- Tā wèn wǒ lèi bulèi.
(He asked whether I was tired.)
- Nǐ wèn tā zhège mǎi bumǎi.
(Ask him whether this is for sale.)
85. dǒng V: understand
- Tā shuō shénme? Wǒ budǒng.
(What did he say? I didn't understand.)
- Nǐ budǒu dǒng ma?
(Don't you understand it all?)
86. kěshi MA: but, however
- Wǒ yǒu qián, kěshi wǒ bumǎi.
(I have money, but I'm not going to buy it.)
- Hěn hǎokàn, kěshi tài dà.
(It's very beautiful, but it's too large.)
87. shíyī NU: eleven
shíèr NU: twelve
shí sān NU: thirteen
etc.
88. èrshí NU: twenty
èrshíyī NU: twenty-one
èrshíliù NU: twenty-six
sānshí NU: thirty
wǔshí NU: fifty
bāshí NU: eighty
jiǔshíjiǔ NU: ninety-nine
89. -xiě- NU/M: (plural general measure)
zhèxiě these
nàxiě those
zhèxiě rén these people
nàxiězhāng zhǐ those sheets of paper

C. Jùzi Gòuzào - Sentence Structure

1. MEASURES. The English language has many measures, but they are all limited in use to certain categories of things or to certain types of measurement. Thus we speak of:

a quart of milk	a <u>fleet</u> of ships	two <u>slices</u> of bread
a <u>length</u> of string	a <u>herd</u> of cows	three <u>pairs</u> of shoes
five <u>sheets</u> of paper	a <u>piece</u> of cheese	six <u>suits</u> of clothes

None of these measures is general in the sense that it can be applied to practically anything.

In Chinese, however, a measure is required (with few exceptions) whenever you speak of an item or quantity of anything. It is omitted only when the noun is used generically to refer to something without regard to quantity: sheep, rice, leather, cotton, iron, paper, etc.

Hence in addition to counterparts of most of the measures commonly used in English, Chinese has a general measure gè, which is not readily rendered in English. It is a bound form and can be used only in combination with a number (NU). (The NU yī 'one' is sometimes dropped after a specifier.)

2. SPECIFIERS. A specifier (SP) is the Chinese equivalent of the English demonstrative pronouns 'this' and 'that', the interrogative pronoun 'which?' and the definite article 'the'. Zhège and nàge when stressed translate as 'this' and 'that' respectively, but when unstressed both may be rendered as 'the'.
3. SPECIFICATION refers to the series of bound or semi-bound modifiers of a noun which always occur in the order specifier - number - measure. This combination is a free unit (N) which may either stand alone or modify another noun. Not all of these elements are always essential to the unit. These minimal combinations are possible:

- 3.1 SP NU-M. This is the basic pattern of specification.

zhè sìzhāng	these four (tables, pictures, etc.)
nà xiēge	those (anything)

- 3.2 SP-M. This is an abbreviation of the SP NU-M pattern in which the NU yī is understood.

nǎběn?	which volume? (which book?)
zhèxiē	these
zhège	this

- 3.3 NU-M. NU and M are both bound forms (with rare exceptions), so they must be used in combination.

liùge	six
jǐzhāng	how many sheets (of something)?
sānběn	three (books)

- 3.4 SP (zhè, nà). Zhè and nà are sometimes used as free forms (abbreviations of zhège and nàge). Used alone, they may stand as subject but not as object. Used a modifier of a noun, they may stand in either position. The interrogative nǎ- cannot be used without a measure.

Zhè hǎo.	This is good.
Zhè rén yǒu qián.	This man is rich.
Wǒ yào nà zhuōzi.	I want that table.

But: Wǒ yào zhège.	I want this (one).
--------------------	--------------------

Specification Drill

The following expressions illustrate the various combinations possible in 'specification'. Repeat them several times. Then make complete sentences using each combination but varying the nouns modified.

SP	NU-M →	N	
	yíge	háizi	(a child)
na-	ge	háizi	(the child)
zhè	ge	háizi	(this child)
zhè	wǔběn	shū	(these five books)
nà	liǎngge	rén	(those two men)
zhè	sānge	qiānbǐ	(the three pencils)
nà	bāzhāng	zhuōzi	(those eight tables)

4. PRONOUNS BEFORE NOUNS:

4.1 A pronoun may stand before certain nouns to modify them, but only where there is a close personal relationship between the two words:

wǒ péngyou	my friend
tāmen péngyou	their friend

4.2 If a NU-M or a SP NU-M expression stands between the pronoun and the noun, their relationship may be either of the following:

<u>Modification:</u>	wǒ yíge péngyou	a friend of mine
	tā nage bǐ	that pen of his
	nǐ na sānge háizi	those three children of yours

<u>Apposition:</u>	tāmen liǎngge rén	the two of them
	wǒ yíge rén	I alone
	wǒmen zheliǎngge rén	the two of us (we two)

Note that the specifier usually loses tone in such a pattern.

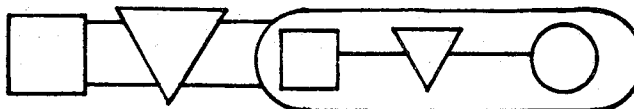
Substitution Drill

N	SP NU-M	N
tā	nage	péngyou
wǒ	zhesānge	zhuōzi
nǐ	nashíge	yízi
wǒmen	nabāběn	shū
nǐmen		zhōng
tāmen		biǎo
		bǐ
		dǒngxì

5. VERBS WHICH TAKE A SENTENCE AS OBJECT. Certain verbs may be followed by a complete statement instead of a simple object-noun. In this lesson we have three examples:

shuō	say that....
wèn	ask whether...
qǐng	request...to...

Note that there is no counterpart in Chinese to the relative pronoun or preposition which follows the verb in English.



Wǒ qǐng tā mǎi dōngxi.
(I asked him to buy something.)

Tā shuō nǐ méiyǒu qián.
(He says that you haven't any money.)

Nǐ wèn tā yào bùyào.
(Ask him whether he wants it or not.)

In English, there is a marked difference between direct and indirect quotation. In Chinese the patterns are identical except for any change of pronoun which may be needed to make sense.

Tā shuō: "Wǒ bùyào."	He said, "I don't want it."
Tā shuō ta bùyào.	He said that he didn't want it.

Exercise

Make sentences with the verbs shuō, wèn and qǐng followed by sentence objects.

6. THE WHOLE BEFORE THE PART. In Chinese the whole is stated first, then the part with which the speaker is concerned.

Zhèxiē shū, yǒude guì, yǒude búguì.
(Some of these books are expensive, some are not.)

Tā nasige péngyou, liǎngge gāo, liǎngge ǎi.
(Two of his four friends are tall, two are short.)

Rén dōu kàn bào: yǒude kàn Zhōngguó bào, yǒude kàn Měiguó bào.
(Everyone read the newspaper: some read Chinese papers, some American papers.)

- 6.1 Limitations on the use of yǒude, 'some'. It may either modify a noun or stand alone, but it cannot follow the main verb. As the object of a verb it must be transposed to the 'topic' position.

Yǒude shū hěn guì. (Some books are very expensive.)
 Yǒude máng, yǒude bù máng. (Some are busy, some are not.)
 Yǒude huà wǒ hěn xǐhuan kàn. (Some pictures I very much enjoy
 looking at.)

6.2 Translation of 'some'.

When an expression such as 'some of my books' is used as object of a verb (as in 'I want some of his books.') the words 'his books', constituting the 'whole', must be transposed to the 'topic' position; 'some of' - translated as yǒude - indicates the 'part' and must therefore follow the 'whole'. This results in the Chinese sentence:

Tāde shū, yǒude wǒ yào.

But if the expression is 'three of his books', it may take the more normal order:

Tāde shū, wǒ yào sānběn.

It should be noted that 'some' as an object, when it does not mean certain items in contrast to certain others, is usually not translated. E.g.:

Do you want some?

Nǐ yào buyào?

D. Zhùjiě - Notes

1. NUMBERS ABOVE TEN AND UNDER A HUNDRED are built on these two patterns:

1.1 The Teens follow the pattern: ten-one, ten-two: (See Voc. 87), the stress falling on the second syllable (units syllable).

1.2 The Tens take the form: two-ten, three-ten: (See Voc. 88). The numbers between even decades follow the pattern: three-ten-five, six-ten-two: (See Voc. 88).

1.3 Numbers formed on the patterns noted above are all pure numbers to which an appropriate measure must be added before they can modify a noun. Note that in 'counting off' the even tens are stressed on the second syllable, but in counting things the stress is on the first syllable:

Counting Off

shísān
 èrshí
 wūshíwǔ
 liùshí

Counting Things

shísānge
 èrshíge
 wūshíwǔge
 liùshízhāng

2. INDEFINITE NUMBERS

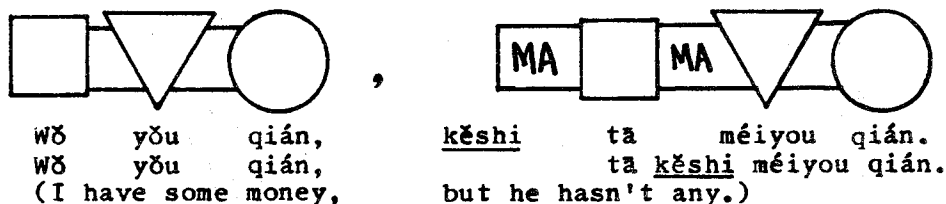
2.1 Jǐ, meaning 'a few', may be prefixed or suffixed to shí 'ten';
it may be suffixed to other decades:

<u>shíjige</u>	a few over ten
<u>jǐshíge</u>	a few tens of
<u>sānshíjige</u>	thirty-odd

2.2 Xiē is commonly used both as a number and as a M to mean 'several'.
As a measure it is usually preceded by a SP.

Zhèxiē shū.	These books.
Tā yào xiēge yǐzi.	He wants some chairs.

3. MOVEABLE ADVERBS (MA), like fixed adverbs such as dōu, tài, hěn, must stand before the verb; unlike fixed adverbs, they may be separated from the verb by the subject of the sentence. Most fixed adverbs are monosyllables; most moveable adverbs are polysyllables. (There are exceptions.)



4. REDUPLICATED VERBS - Functive verbs are frequently reduplicated with little essential change of meaning. Sometimes the reduplication gives the effect of 'doing it a little'.

Nǐ wènwen tā	You ask him.
Qǐng tā shuōshuo.	Ask him to tell about it.

The tone of the reduplication is lost.

5. QǐNG and Wèn. When these verbs are followed by a noun as object,

qǐng means 'invite'

Wǒ qǐngle sānge xuésheng.
(I've invited three students.)

wèn means 'ask', 'inquire of'

Nǐ wèn tā ba!
(You ask him!)

When they are followed by a clause as object,

qǐng takes as object only a statement and may mean either 'ask' or 'invite'

wèn takes only questions as object and means 'ask'

Tā qǐng wǒ chīfàn.
(He asked me to dinner.)

Wǒ wèn tā qù bùqù.
(I asked him whether he was going or not.)

E. Liànxí - Exercises

1. Practice Counting. Count slowly from one to ten, then up to twenty, then up to one hundred, getting the pattern fixed in your mind. Speed up until you can count as fast in Chinese as in English.

a. Practice Both Styles:

Counting Off

yī
èr
sān
sì
wǔ
liù
qī
bā
jiǔ
shí
shíyī
shíèr
shísān
shísì
shíwǔ
shíliù
shíqī
shíbā
shíjiǔ
èrshí
èrshíyī
èrshíèr
etc. to one hundred

Counting Things

* yíge
* liǎngge
sānge
sìge
wǔge
liùge
* qīge
* bāge
jiǔge
shíge
shíyíge
shíèrge
shísānge
shísìge
shíwǔge
shíliùge
* shíqīge
* shíbāge
shíjiǔge
èrshíge
* èrshíyíge
èrshíèrge
etc. to yībǎige

*The asterisks call your attention to irregularities in tone or pronunciation.

- b. Now substitute a specific measure such as běn or zhāng in column 2.
- c. Numbers above 100. Drill on these numbers until you can say each quickly and smoothly.

Common Style

yìbāi-líng-yī
 yìbǎi-yīshí
 yìqiān-yìbǎi-yīshí
 yìqiān-líng-yī
 èrbǎi-sānshíèr
 liǎngqiān-èrbǎi
 liùqiān-bābǎiwūshíqī
 bāqiān-sānbǎi-sì

Telephone Style

yì-líng-yī	101
yī-yī-líng	110
yī-yī-yī-líng	1110
yì-líng-líng-yī	1001
èr-sān-èr	232
èr-èr-líng-líng	2200
liù-bā-wū-qī	6857
bā-sān-sì-líng	8340

2. Rhythm Drills on Specification. Accustom your mind to the specification formula SP NU-M N by repeating these sentences aloud. Don't refer to the appended translations unless necessary.

A. SP-M N Sentences:

- Zhège rén yǒu qián.
- Tā yào mǎi nàge zhuōzi.
- Zhège zhuōzi tài xiǎo. Nǐ yǒu dà zhuōzi méiyǒu?
- Zhège péngyou yǒu qián, nàge péngyou méiyǒu qián.
- Nàběn shū buhǎo, kěshi zhèběn hěn hǎo.
- Qǐng gěi wǒ nàge zhōng. Wǒ búyào zhège.
- Zhège rén yǒu biǎo. Nàge rén yě yǒu biǎo. Rèn dōu yǒu biǎo.

B. NU-M N Sentences:

- Wǒ yǒu yíge péngyou; tā yǒu liǎngběn shū.
- Tā yào sāngē zhōng. Nǐ yào yíge búyào?
- Tā shuō tā yào mǎi yíge dà zhuōzi. Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu?
- Wǒ yǒu biǎo, tā yǒu biǎo; wǒmen liǎngge rén dōu yǒu biǎo.
- Tā yào gěi wǒmen sìge yīzi, yíge xiǎo zhuōzi.
- Nǐ shuō nǐ yǒu sìge biǎo; qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ yíge.

C. SP NU-M N Sentences:

- Zhè liǎngge rén dōu yǒu qián.
- Tāmen yào mǎi nà sāngē zhuōzi.
- Nà liǎngge Měiguó rén, yíge yǒu qián, yíge méiyǒu.
- Nà liǎngge zhōng, wǒ yào yíge, tā yào yíge.
- Wǒ yǒu liǎngge péngyou. Zhè sāngē kǎn Zhōngguó bào; nà sāngē kǎn Měiguó bào.
- Zhè liǎngge dà yīzi wǒ bumǎi; wǒ yào mǎi nà liǎngge xiǎo yīzi.

- D. Translation. A: a) This man has money. b) He wants to buy that table. c) This table is too small. Have you any large tables? d) This friend has money, that one hasn't. e) That book is no good, but this one is quite good. f) Please give me that clock; I don't want this one. g) This man has a watch. That man has a watch. Everyone has a watch. B: a) I have a friend; he has two books. b) He has three clocks. Do you want one? c) He says he wants to buy a large table. Do you have any? d) I have a watch, he has a watch; both of us have watches. e) He is going to give us four chairs and a small table. f) You say you both have four watches; please give me one. C: a) Both of these men have money. b) They want to buy those three tables. c) One of those two Americans is rich, one isn't.

L. 4

d) I want one of those two clocks, and he wants one. e) I have six friends. These three read Chinese newspapers, these three read American newspapers. f) I'm not going to buy these two large chairs; I want to buy those two small chairs.

3. Translation Exercises

A. Specification phrases

these three
which five?
how many sheets?
those
two persons

twenty-seven books
this chair
these tables
three newspapers
that picture

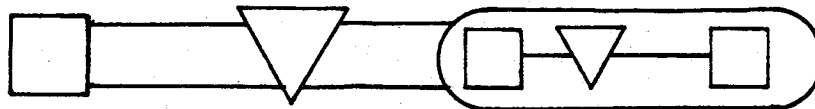
B. Specification Sentences

- a. I want two sheets of paper.
- b. He has seven books.
- c. I want to buy two tables and eight chairs.
- d. How many chairs do you want to buy?
- e. I like this picture but not that one.
- f. The child doesn't like this one, he likes that one.
- g. Which picture are you buying?
- h. Which two books did you give him?
- i. Two tables are too low, one is too high.
- j. I'll sell those two books.

C. 'Whole' and 'Part' Sentences

- a. One of these two pictures is too big; one is too small.
- b. I like some of his paintings.
- c. All three of us want to buy clocks; one wants to buy large clocks, two want to buy small clocks.
- d. Not all of those American watches are good-looking. Some of them are too expensive too.
- e. Of those two Americans, one is my friend, one isn't.

D. A Sentence as Object



wǒ bùzhīdào tā shì shéi.
(I don't know who he is.)

- a. I know he has a girl friend.
- b. I say he doesn't have money.
- c. Did you know or didn't you that he was an American?
- d. I asked him to buy a table.
- e. Ask him who he is.
- f. I asked them to read this newspaper.
- g. I want to ask you whether or not you know who he is.

- h. He asked me what I wanted.
- i. I asked him to give me the small chair.
- j. Who asked you to say it?

4. Translation of the Dialogue

Buying Paintings

- Wáng: I have two good friends. One friend sells tables and chairs; one friend sells paper and paintings.
- Lǐ: I ask you: Which are better looking, Chinese paintings or American paintings?
- Wáng: I don't understand paintings too well; but that friend of mine says: some Chinese paintings are good, some foreign paintings are good. Do you also like paintings?
- Lǐ: That's right, I also like paintings. Some people say Chinese paintings are good; also some say foreign paintings are good. But I like American paintings.
- Wáng: I have four Chinese paintings. Please take a look and see which is best.
- Lǐ: Two of these four paintings are large, two are small. Do you want to sell all of these paintings?
- Wáng: Not all.
- Lǐ: These two are really nice. Will you sell them?
- Wáng: No. I also like these two. I'll sell those two small paintings. Do you want them?
- Lǐ: I don't like those two too much. I want to buy an American painting. Do you have any?
- Wáng: I don't have any American paintings. That friend of mine has. I'll ask him whether he'll sell one or not.
- Lǐ: Fine. Thankyou.
- Wáng: You're welcome. Goodbye.

DÌWŪKÈ - LESSON 5

E Q U A T I V E S E N T E N C E S

A. Duìhuà - Dialogue

Nín guìxìng? - May I Ask Your Name?

Zhāng: Nín guìxìng?

Wáng: Wǒ xìng Wáng. Nín guìxìng?

Zhāng: Wǒ xìng Zhāng. Wǒ zhège péngyou xìng Lǐ.

Wáng: Lǐ Xiānsheng, nín hǎo? Nín guìguó shì nǎguo? Shì Yīngguo ba?

Lǐ: Búshì, wǒ shì Fàguo rén. Wǒ tàitai shì Yīngguo rén.

Zhāng: Lǐ Xiānsheng, Lǐ Tàitai yǒu sānge xiǎoháizi. Liǎngge nánháizi, yíge nǚháizi.

Wáng: Qǐng wèn, nín nasānge háizi dōu jiào shénme míngzi?

Lǐ: Nánháizi, yíge jiào Qiáozhì, yíge jiào Wēilián; nǚháizi jiào Mǎlì.

Wáng: Zhāng Xiānsheng yǒu jǐge háizi?

Lǐ: Zhāng Xiānsheng méiyǒu tàitai, kěshì tā yǒu yíge nǚpéngyou, hěn hǎokàn.

Wáng: Shì ma? Nín de nǚpéngyou xìng shénme?

Lǐ: Tā bugàosong wǒmen, kěshì wǒ zhīdao shì yíge xuésheng.

Zhāng: Wǒ méiyǒu nǚpéngyou. Tā shuō wǒ yǒu.

B. Shēngzi - Vocabulary

- | | |
|---|---|
| 90. xiānsheng
Xiānsheng (Xs.)
Zhāng Xiānsheng | N: gentleman, teacher, husband, sir
N: Mr.
N: Mr. Zhāng |
| 91. tàitai
Tàitai (Tt.)
Lǐ Tàitai | N: (married) lady, wife
N: Mrs., Madam
N: Mrs. Lǐ |
| 92. xiáojie
Xiaojiě
Wáng Xiaojiě | N: young lady, girl
N: Miss
N: Miss Wang |
| 93. háizi
háizimen
xiǎoháizi | N: child, children
N: children
N: child, children |
| 94. xuésheng | N: student |

95. guó
guìguó
nāguó?
- N: country, nation
N: (your) honorable country
N: what country?
- Nín guìguó shì nāguó?
(What nationality are you?)
- Nimen guìguó rén dōu gāo ma?
(Are the people of your nation all tall?)
96. nán-
nánrén
nánde
nánháizi
nánxuésheng
- BF: male (of persons)
N: male, man
N: man, male
N: boy, male child
N: man student
97. nǚ-
nǚrén
nǚde
nǚháizi
nǚxuésheng
- BF: female (of persons)
N: woman, female
N: woman, female
N: girl, female child
N: woman student, co-ed
98. xìng
xìng
guìxìng
- N: surname
EV: be surnamed
IE: (your) honorable surname is?
- Tā xìng shénme?
(What is his surname?)
- Tā xìng Zhào.
(His surname is Zhào.)
- Nín guìxìng? Xìng Zhāng.
(What is your name? Zhāng.)
99. míngzi
- N: name, given name
- Tā jiào shénme míngzi?
(What is his name?)
- Tāde míngzi jiào shénme?
(What is his name?)
100. shì
- EV: be, is, are, am
- Tā shì Zhōngguó rén.
(He is a Chinese.)
- Nǎge shì nǐde?
(Which one is yours?)
101. jiào
- EV: be called, be named
- Zhège jiào shénme?
(What is this called?)
- Tā jiào Mǎlì, wǒ jiào Qiáozhǐ.
(Her name is Mary, mine is George.)

L. 5

102. gào song
(gào su)

V: tell, inform

Qǐng nǐ gào song wǒ nǎige piányi.
(Please tell me which is cheaper.)

103. zhī dao
bù zhī dao

V: know, know that
V: not know

Shéi zhī dao a?
(Who knows?)

Nǐ zhī dao bù zhī dao?
(Do you know?)

Wǒmen dōu zhī dao tā yǒu qián.
(We all know he has money.)

104. -wèi

M: (polite M for persons - See Note 3.3)

yī wèi tài tai	(a lady)
sān wèi xiǎo jie	(three young ladies)
yī wèi xiān sheng	(a gentleman)

105. -zhǐ

M: (measure for writing instruments)

yī zhǐ bǐ (a pen)

106. -bǎi

M: hundred

107. -qiān

M: thousand

108. -de
wǒ de
nǐ de
tā de
wǒ men de
nǐ men de
tā men de
shéi de?
háizǐ de
noun-de

P: (particle of modification)

N: mine, my

N: your, yours

N: his, her, hers

N: our, ours

N: your, yours

N: their, theirs

N: whose?

N: the child's, of the child

N: (possessive form) See pattern 2.2

109. ba

P: (for making a suggestion or indicating possibility)

Nǐ hěn máng ba?
(You are very busy, I take it?)

Nǐ mǎi zhè ge ba!
(You'd better buy this one!)

Zhè ge shì wàiguo biǎo ba?
(This is a foreign watch, I suppose.)

110. Jiānà dà

PW: Canada

111. Yīngguó

PW: England, Great Britain

112. Fàguo	PW: France
113. Déguo	PW: Germany
114. Èguo	PW: Russia
115. Rìběn	PW: Japan
116. Cháoxiǎn	PW: Korea (also: Hánguo)

C. Jùzi Gòuzào - Sentence Structure

1. EQUATIVE VERBS (EV) connect or equate two nouns or nominal expressions. They resemble in function the English verb is in the sentence 'That man is my brother.' The verb shì is the equative verb most commonly met.



Tā (Who is he?)	shì	shéi?
Tā (He is a student.)	shì	xuésheng.
Zhè(ge) (What is this?)	shì	shénme?
Nà(ge) (That is a pen.)	shì	gāngbǐ.
Nàge xuésheng (That student is a Russian.)	shì	Èguorén.

Substitution Drill

<u>N</u>	<u>EV</u>	<u>N</u>
Wǒ	shì	Zhōngguó rén.
Nǐ		Yīngguó rén.
Tā		Měiguó rén.
Wǒmen (dǒu)		Fàguó rén
Nǐmen (dǒu)		Rìběn rén.
Tāmen (dǒu)		Cháoxiǎn rén.
Tāde péngyou		Měiguó xiǎojie.
Wǒde xuésheng		Déguó tàitai.
Nàge rén		shéi?
Zhège rén		
Zhè(ge)		shénme?
Nà(ge)		

When alternatives follow shì, the verb is repeated. (Cf. Lesson 2, Pattern 4.2)

Tāmen dōu shì Zhōngguo rén, shì Rìběn rén?
(Are they all Chinese or Japanese?)

Tā xìng Lǐ, xìng Zhāng?
(Is his surname Lǐ or Zhāng?)

Zhèběn shū shì nǐde, shì tāde?
(Is this book yours or his?)

Substitution Drill

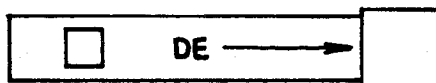
<u>N</u>	<u>EV-bu-EV</u>	<u>N</u>
Tā	shì bushì	Rìběn rén?
Nǐ		xuésheng?
Nǐmen		xiānsheng?
Tāmen		wàiguó tàitai?
Tā tàitai		Fàguó xiǎojie?
Nǐde xiānsheng		nǐde háizi?
		tāde tàitai?

D. Zhùjiě - Notes

1. MODIFICATION OF NOUNS BY NOUNS.

1.1 By Position. It has been noted (Lesson 1, Note 1.2) that one noun may modify another noun, the modifier standing before the thing modified. This modification by position was qualified in Lesson 2, Pattern 3 by the alternative possibility that this positional relationship may indicate apposition.

1.2 By the Particle DE. Modification is also indicated by suffixing the particle de to the modifying element. Thus:



tāde	gāngbǐ	(his pen)
wǒde	zhuōzi	(my table)
shéide	qián?	(whose money?)
xiānshengde	shū	(the teacher's book)
xuéshengde	péngyou	(the student's friend)

The noun modified is frequently omitted when it can readily be understood from the context.

Nǎge shì shéide?	(Whose is it?)
Shì wǒde.	(It's mine.)
Tāde buhǎo.	(His is no good.)

L. 5

In a series of nouns modifying nouns, the particle de is retained only with the last modifier:

Wǒ fùqinde bǐ. (My father's pen.)
Ta tàitai de fùqin. (His wife's father.)

2. COURTESY EXPRESSIONS do not always fall into regular patterns of sentence structure. They are idioms, not patterns on which to build other sentences.

2.1 To inquire a person's surname or nationality, the prefix guì 'honorable' is added to xìng 'surname' or guó 'country'. The polite pronoun nín is commonly used instead of nǐ, especially in North China.

Nín guìxìng? What is your (honorable) surname?
Nín guìguó shì nǎguó? What is your (honorable) country?

In the answer the normal EV pattern is used:

(Wǒ) xìng Wèi. (My surname is Wèi.)
(I am surnamed Wèi.)

Questions are sometimes asked substituting xiānsheng (tàitai, xiǎojiě) for nín.

Xiānsheng guìxìng? (What is the gentleman's honorable surname?)
Xiǎojiě guìguó shì nǎguó? (What is the young lady's honorable nationality?)

2.2 TITLES FOLLOW NAMES, and the stress is on the surname rather than the title; consequently the titles lose tone and tend to be elided like the English Mrs. for Mistress.

(Abbreviation)
Zhāng Xiānsheng (Zhāng Xs.) Mr. Zhāng
Wèi Tàitai (Wèi Tt.) Mrs. Wèi
Zhào Xiǎojiě (Zhào Xj.) Miss Zhào

2.3 THE MEASURE -WÈI is more polite than -ge in referring to persons. However, the noun rén by itself (unmodified) cannot take -wèi as its measure.

Zhèwèi shì Zhào Xs. (This is Mr. Zhào.)
Tāmen sānwèi dōu shì Fǎguó rén. (All three of them are French.)
Yíwèi shì tàitai, yíwèi shì xiǎojiě. (One is a married lady, one is a single lady.)

3. NAMES OF COUNTRIES. The names for China and her near neighbors usually have historical or literary meaning. Thus:

Zhōngguó (China) The Middle Country
Rìběn (Japan) Land of the Rising Sun
Cháoxiǎn (Korea) Land of the Morning Freshness
(Hánguó) (Land of Hán)

Names from the western world have been transliterated approximately by Chinese characters. The custom is to choose characters of a pleasant or flattering significance. Hence:

Měiguó (America)	The Beautiful Country
Yīngguó (England)	The Brave Country
Déguó (Deutschland/ Germany)	The Virtuous Country

(Do not expect to trace the meaning of all such transliterations.)

4. ZHÈ and NÀ are frequently used without a measure, but can stand alone only in the subject position, never in the object position. Thus used they resemble pronouns and can sometimes be translated as 'it'.

Zhè shì wǒde.
Nà butài hǎo.

It's mine.
That's not too good.

E. Liànxí - Exercises

Repeat these pyramid drills over and over. Make others of a similar sort and use them.

- Shì shénme?
Zhè shì shénme?
Nàge shì shénme?
Zhège dōngxi shì shénme?
Zhège xiǎo dōngxi shì shénme?
- Shì bǐ.
Nà shì bǐ.
Nàge shì bǐ.
Nàge dōngxi shì bǐ.
Nàge xiǎo dōngxi shì bǐ.
- Shì bǐ ma?
Zhè shì bǐ ma?
Zhège shì bǐ ma?
Zhège dōngxi shì bǐ ma?
Zhège xiǎo dōngxi shì bǐ ma?
- Shì.
Shì bǐ.
Shì qiǎnbǐ.
Shì Zhōngguó qiǎnbǐ.
Zhège dōngxi shì Zhōngguó qiǎnbǐ.
- Tā shì shéi?
Nàge rén shì shéi?
Nàge Zhōngguó rén shì shéi?

L. 5

6.

Shì Zhāng Xiānshēng.
Tā shì Zhāng Xiānshēng.
Nà shì Zhāng Xiānshēng.
Nàgè rén shì Zhāng Xiānshēng.
Nàgè Zhōngguó rén shì Zhāng Xiānshēng.

7.

Nà jiào shénme?
Nàgè jiào shénme?
Nàgè dōngxī jiào shénme?
Nàgè xiǎo dōngxī jiào shénme?

8.

Jiào qián.
Nà jiào qián.
Nàgè jiào qián.
Nàgè dōngxī jiào qián.
Nàgè xiǎo dōngxī jiào qián.
Nà liǎnggè xiǎo dōngxī jiào qián ma? Duìle.

9.

Guìxǐng? Xǐng Lǐ.
Nín guìxǐng? Wǒ xǐng Lǐ.
Nín guìxǐng a?

10.

Tā xǐng shénme? Xǐng Zhào.
Nàgè rén xǐng shénme? Tā xǐng Zhào.
Nàgè Zhōngguó rén xǐng shénme?

11.

Tā jiào shénme? Jiào Xiǎo Sā.
Nàgè rén jiào shénme? Tā jiào Xiǎo Sā.
Tā jiào shénme míngzi?

12. Translation of the Dialogue

May I Ask Your Name?

Zhāng: May I ask your name?

Wáng: My name is Wáng. And yours?

Zhāng: Mine is Zhāng. This friend of mine is named Lǐ.

Wáng: How are you, Mr. Lǐ? What is your nationality? English, I take it.

Lǐ: No, I'm French. My wife is English.

Zhāng: Mr. and Mrs. Lǐ have three children. Two are boys and one is a girl.

Wáng: May I ask what the names of your three children are?

Lǐ: One of the boys is named George and one is named William; the girl is named Mary.

Wáng: How many children has Mr. Zhāng?

Lǐ: Mr. Zhāng isn't married, (has no wife) but he has a girl friend who is very good-looking.

Wáng: Is that so? What is your girl friend's name?

Lǐ: He won't tell us, but I know she's a student.

Zhāng: I haven't any girl friend. He says I have.

Notes

DÌLIÙKÈ - LESSON 6

MONEY AND COUNTING

A. Duihuà - Dialogue

Mǎi Dōngxì - Shopping

Characters: Mǎidōngxide - A Buyer
Mǎidōngxide - A Seller

- Mǎi: Nǐ yǒu gāngbǐ ma?
- Mài: Yǒu. Nín yào nǎguóde?
- Mǎi: Yīngguode Měiguode wǒ dōu kànkàn, hǎo buhǎo?
- Mài: Hǎo, zhèliǎngge shì Yīngguo gāngbǐ; zhèliǎngge shì Měiguo gāngbǐ - yě piányi, yě hǎo.
- Mǎi: Duōshao qián yíge?
- Mài: Měiguo gāngbǐ shíkuai-líng-wǔmáo; Yīngguo gāngbǐ guì - shíèrkuai-qímáo-wǔ yízhǐ.
- Mǎi: Wǒ yào yíge Měiguo gāngbǐ. Nimen yě mài Zhōngguo shū ma?
- Mài: Zhōngguo shū yě yǒu, kě buduō. Nín yào mài shénme Zhōngguo shū?
- Mǎi: Wǒ děi xiángxíang..... Yǒu yìběn shū míngzi jiào Zhōngguo Huà. Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu?
- Mài: Nín qǐng kàn shì zhèběn ma? Zhèběn shū děi mài sìqiān-èrbaikuai Zhōngguo qián, kěshì Měiguó qián jiù shì shíwǔkuai-èrmáo-èr. Zhèběn shū zhēn hǎo. Zhōngguo yǒu bushǎode hǎo dōngxì.
- Mǎi: Duìle, Zhōngguo yǒu hěnduō hǎo dōngxì. Hǎo, zhèliǎngzhǐ bǐ, yìběn shū, yígòng duōshao qián?
- Mài: Yígòng èrshiliùkuai-símáo-jiǔ.
- Mǎi: Èrshiliùkuai-símáo-jiǔ! Búduì ba?
- Mài: Nín bùzhīdào - yíkuài qiánde dōngxì yǒu sānfēn qiánde shuǐ.
- Mǎi: Tài duō. Wǒ jiù gěi èrshíèrkuai-bàn. Nǐ mài bumài ba?
- Mài: Èrshíèrkuai-bàn kě búgòu. Èrshísānkuai qián màigěi nín.
- Mǎi: Hǎo. (gěi tā qián) Zhè shì èrshíwǔkuài.
- Mài: Wǒ děi gěi nín liǎngkuai qián. Duì buduì?
- Mǎi: Duìle.

B. Shēngzi - Vocabulary

117. yìdiǎnr N: a little, a bit, some
 Wǒ yào yìdiǎnr.
 (I want a little.)
 Tā yǒu (yì)diǎnr qián.
 (He has some money.)
118. líng NU: zero
 yí líng wǔ jiǔ (1059)
 yì jǐ liù líng (1960)
 yì bǎi - líng - wǔ (ge) (105)
 yì kuài - líng - sān fēn (\$1.03)
 liǎng qiān - líng - èr (2002)
119. -bàn M: half (Note 3)
 yí bàn (one-half)
 zhè bàn (this half)
 nà bàn (that half)
 Nǐ gěi yí bàn, wǒ gěi yí bàn.
 (You give half and I'll give half.)
- 119.5 bàn- NU: half
 bàn ge (half a ...)
 bàn zhāng (half a sheet)
 bàn běn (half a book)
- bàn NU: half (after a measure)
 sāngē - bàn (three and a half)
 liǎng zhāng - bàn (two and a half sheets)
 qī kuài - bàn qián (\$7.50)
120. duōshao NU: how many? how much?
 Zhè ge zhuō zi duōshao qián?
 (How much is this table?)
 Nín yào duōshao bǐ?
 (How many pens do you want?)
121. duō SV: be much, be many (See Notes 2 and 5)
 Wǒ de hái zi tài duō.
 (My children are too numerous.)
 Nǚ xué shēng bù duō.
 (The girl students are few.)

L. 6

121.5 -duō

NU: a few, plus, odd (after a measure)

yíkuai-duō qián
(a little over a dollar)

wǔbǎi-duō rén
(over 500 people)

hěn duō

SV: very many, many

(While duō alone cannot be used to modify a noun, hěn duō can.)

Tā yǒu hěn duō xuésheng.
(He has many students.)

Tāde xuésheng hěn duō.
(His students are many.)

122. shǎo
bùshǎo

SV: be few, little (in quantity) (Note 5)

SV: quite a few, not a few

(N.B.: shǎo cannot be used freely to modify a noun, but bùshǎo can.)

Nǚxuésheng zhēn bùshǎo.
(There certainly are a lot of girl students.)

Qǐng liǎngge péngyou tài shǎo ma?
(Will inviting a couple of friends be too few?)

Měiguó yǒu bùshǎo Zhōngguó rén.
(America has a good many Chinese.)

123. gòu

SV: be enough, sufficient (cannot modify nouns)

A: sufficiently, ...enough

Sānge gòu bugòu?
(Are three enough?)

Wǒde qián búgòu.
(I haven't enough money.)

Zhège zhuōzi búgòu dà.
(This table isn't big enough.)

124. yǒu
méiyǒu
yǒurén
méirén

V: there is, there are (See Note 7)

V: there isn't, there aren't

PH: there are those who (some people)

PH: there are none who (nobody)

Yǒu liǎngge rén gěi wǒ qián.
(There are two men who gave me money.)

Méiyǒu rén shuō tā hǎo.
(No one says he is good.)

125. -kuài M: dollar
126. -máo M: dime
127. -fēn M: cent
- sānfēn qián (\$0.03)
liǎngmáo-wūfēn qián (\$0.25)
yīkuài-qīmáo-liù (\$1.76)
shíèrkuài-bàn (\$12.50)
128. mài V: sell for (so much money)
màigěi V: sell to (so-and-so)
- Zhège zhuōzi mài èrshikuai qián.
(This table sells for twenty dollars.)
- Shísānkuai-bàn màigěi nǐ.
(I'll sell it to you for \$13.50.)
- Tā màigěi wǒ liǎngzhāng zhǐ.
(He sold me two sheets of paper.)
129. xiǎng V: think (that) (Note 8)
xiǎngxiang V: think (it) over
- Wǒ xiǎng tā méiyǒu.
(I think he has none.)
- Wǒ xiǎng tā bùzhidào.
(I don't think he knows.)
- Wǒ děi xiǎngxiang.
(I must think it over.)
130. děi AV: must, have to
- Tā bùzhidào; nǐ děi gào sòng tā.
(He doesn't know; you must tell him.)
- Nǐ děi gěi wǒ (yī)diǎnr qián.
(You must give me a little money.)
131. yígòng A: altogether, in all, all told (Note 6)
(must be followed by a NU)
- Wǒ yígòng jiù yǒu sān gè.
(I only have three all told.)
- Yígòng nǐ yào duōshao qián?
(How much money do you want altogether?)
- Yígòng jǐshíjǐzhāng?
(How many sheets all told?)

132. jiù

A: only, just

Tā jiù yǒu yìběn shū.
(He has only one book.)

Wǒ jiù zhīdao yìdiǎnr.
(I know only a little.)

Wǒ jiù qǐng nǐ.
(I'm just inviting you.)

133. zhēn
zhēndeA: truly, really
IE: It's true.

Ōu, zhège zhuōzi zhēn Āi!
(Oh, this table is really low.)

Měiguó yǒu hěn duō dōngxi zhēn piányi.
(In America there are lots of things that
are really cheap.)

Nǐde nǚpéngyou zhēn duō!
(Your girl friends are certainly numerous.)

134. shuì

N: tax

C. Jùzi Gòuzào - Sentence Structure

1. MONETARY MEASURES - The most common units for sums of money are the equivalents of dollars, dimes, and cents, which are preceded by appropriate numbers and followed by the noun qián 'money'.

-kuài	M: dollar	shíkuai qián	\$10.00
-máo	M: dime	sānmáo qián	.30
-fēn	M: cent	wǔfēn qián	.05

- 1.1 From large to small. In mixed sums the larger units precede the smaller, and qián normally follows the entire monetary expression. (Omitted when meaning is clear from context. See 1.3)
- 1.2 -Máo used consistently. In marked contrast to English usage, Chinese does not use the teen numbers in speaking of cents. The pattern is one dime, three cents, never thirteen cents. Similarly in dealing with multiple tens of cents, the pattern is one dollar, five dimes, never one dollar fifty cents.

yīmáo-wǔfēn qián	\$.15
liǎngmáo-bāfēn qián	.28
sānkuai-sīmáo qián	3.40
wǔkuaiyīmáo èrfēn qián	5.12

- 1.3 Concise Forms. In a series of NU-M expressions, not only can the final noun be omitted when the implication is clear, but the final measure may also be dropped, since it can readily be implied from the preceding measures of the series: Monetary expressions are commonly so abbreviated.

Similarly in English we say two-seventy-five (\$2.75) and two-pound-three-and-six (£2/3s/6d.)

yìqiān-sān(bǎi)	1300
sānbǎiliù(shí)	360
yīmáo (qián)	\$3.10
sānkuài (qián)	\$3.00
liùkuài-qímáo-wǔ (fēn qián)	\$6.75
sānbǎikuài (qián)	\$300.00
yībǎi-yī (shí)	110
liǎngqiān-wǔ (bǎi)	2,500
liǎngqiān-èrbǎi-wǔ (shí)	2,250

2. NUMBERS ABOVE TEN. Chinese numbers consistently follow the decimal system pattern from large units to smaller. Each position is represented by a number and a measure (NU-M) except when the NU is used for "counting off", rather than counting things. Actually the forms shí 'ten', bǎi 'hundred', and qiān 'thousand', function sometimes as numbers and sometimes as measures.

2.1 "Counting Off". We noted that the numbers from one to ten stand alone only when "counting off". So in numbers above ten, when "counting off", we use such forms as:

shí	10
shíliù	16
èrshíliù	26
yībǎi-qīshíjiǔ	179
liǎngqiān-bābǎi-sānshíjiǔ	2,839

2.2 Counting Things. When counting things, the number is normally followed by a measure. (There are certain exceptions in the case of hundreds and thousands.)

shíge rén	10 men
shíliùge rén	16 men
sānshíge rén	30 men
sānshíqīge rén	37 men
yībǎige rén	100 men
yībǎièrshíge rén	120 men
liùbǎi sānshíyīge rén	631 men
sìqiān jiǔbǎi bāshíliùge rén	4,986 men
yìqiānběn shū	1,000 books

2.3 Zero. Where there are one or more zeros within a number, líng is inserted. Líng is not used as the final item in a number except in 'telephone style'. (See 2.4 below)

yībǎi-líng-wǔ	105
yìqiān-líng-wǔ	1,005
yìqiān-líng--wǔshí	1,050

- 2.4 Telephone Style. As in English, when giving telephone numbers, a simplified style is used for clarity. All measures are omitted, and ling is repeated for each zero:

èr-líng	20
èr-wǔ	25
sān-líng-sì	304
sān-liù-bā	368
bā-líng-líng-liù-líng	8-0060

- 2.5 Stress in Numbers. In two-syllable even-ten numbers, the normal stress is on the first syllable: èrshí, liùshí, etc. In three syllable numbers, the stress normally falls on the last syllable: wǔshìèr, qīshíyī, etc.

3. NUMBER EXPRESSIONS WITHOUT VERBS. In asking and quoting prices and in other situations calling for apportionment of things, numbers are commonly used without a verb.

- 3.1 The article is linked to the price without a verb. (Verbs like shì and mài may be added if desired.)



Zhège zhuōzi	(shì)	sānkuài qián.
(This table	(mài)	
(This table	is	three dollars.)
	sells for	three dollars.)

Substitution Drill

<u>N</u>	(<u>V</u>)	<u>NU-M</u>	<u>N</u>
Shū	(mài)	duōshao	qián.
Bǐ	(shì)	bákuài	
Zhuōzi	(děi)	wǔmáo	
Yīzi		etc.	
Bào			

- 3.2 'So much apiece' is expressed by two NU-M expressions without a linking verb:



Yīmáo qián (mǎi) yīgè.
(Ten cents apiece.)

Yīgè (mài) yīmáo qián.
(One sells for a dime.)

Sānge rén (chī) liǎngge.
(Two for three people to eat.)

The stress is normally on the last syllable - the measure. Exception: When the measure ge is preceded by numbers other than yī

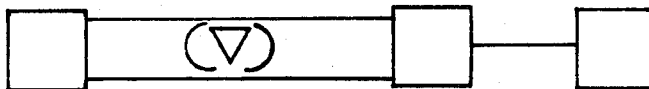
Note: An appropriate verb can be inserted between the two NU-M-N expressions (mǎi, gěi, etc.) where clarity demands it. The SP měi-'each' may stand before the first number if desired.

Exercise

Make sentences in the pattern given above and using:

NU-M-duō
NU-M-bàn

3.3 The two patterns above may be combined with both verbs omitted:

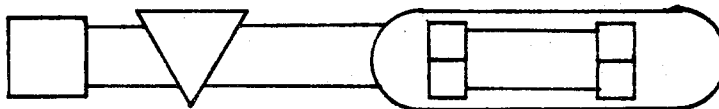


Huàr (shì) shíkuài qián yìzhāng.
(The pictures are ten dollars apiece.)

Substitution Drill

<u>N</u>	<u>(V)</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>per</u> _____
Huàr	(shì)	yíkuài qián	yì-zhāng
Bī	(mǎi)	etc.	-běn
Biǎo			-ge
Zhōng		duōshao qián	
Màozi		jīkuài qián	
Zhī		jīmáo qián	
Qiānbǐ		jīfēn qián	
Shénme			

4. ASKING AND OFFERING A PRICE sometimes does require the presence of a verb. To demand a price is expressed by yào: to offer a price by gěi.



Tā yào yíkuài qián yíge.
(He asks a dollar apiece.)

Tā gěi yíkuài qián yíge.
(He offers a dollar apiece.)

Exercise

Make sentences on this pattern using the following main verbs:

wèn
gàosong

shuō
xiǎng

zhīdao
děi

gěi
shǐ

D. Zhùjǐě - Notes

1. INTERROGATIVE NUMBERS. Jǐ-? and duōshǎo? are two question words which deal with quantity and are usually answered in terms of numbers. Both may be translated 'how many?'. However, jǐ- expects an answer under ten, while duōshǎo is not so limited.

- 1.1 Jǐ- is a number and is regularly followed by an appropriate measure. It may be substituted for another number in a numerical expression.

jǐge rén?	how many people?
jǐshíběn shū?	how many tens of volumes of books?
jǐbǎizhāng zhǐ?	how many hundred sheets of paper?
shíjǐge zhōng?	ten-and-how many clocks?
èrshíjǐge rén	twenty-how many people
yìqiān-jǐbǎizhāng zhǐ?	A thousand and how many hundred sheets of paper?

- 1.2 Duōshǎo is sometimes a noun; hence it does not require a measure after it. At other times it is a number and does require a measure.

duōshǎo zhǐ?	how much paper?
duōshaozhāng zhǐ?	how many sheets of paper?
duōshaoběn shū?	how many volumes?

The general measure ge- seldom appears after duōshǎo. The most common use is better illustrated by such sentences as:

Nǐ yǒu duōshao qián?	How much money have you?
Tā yǒu duōshao?	How much has he?

2. APPROXIMATE NUMBERS may be formed in these ways:

- 2.1 By using duō in the units position of a compound number:

sānqiānduōkuài qián	(\$3000 - plus)
yībǎiduōge biǎo	(over 100 watches)
èrshiduōběn shū	(more than 20 books)

- 2.2 By using duō after the measure kuài or máo in a money expression, it is indicated that the 'odd' sum is a fraction of the last mentioned measure.

yíkuaiduō qián	(over a dollar)
liǎngmáoduō qián	(over twenty cents)

- 2.3 By using the normally interrogative number jǐ in the sense of 'a few' in place of a definite number. (See Lesson 4, Note 2)

sānkuaijǐmáo qián	(something over \$3.00)
èrshíjǐge	(twenty-odd)

It should be noted that to distinguish this use from the interrogative use the stress is taken off the jǐ:

<u>jǐshíběn</u> shū?	(how many tens of books?)
<u>jǐshí</u> gē	(several tens)
shí <u>jǐzhāng</u> zhǐ?	(how many over ten sheets of paper?)
<u>shíjǐzhāng</u> zhǐ	(a few over ten sheets of paper)

2.4 Alternative approximations like 'two or three' follow the pattern two-three:

yí-liǎnggē rén	(one or two people)
liǎng-sānběn shū	(two or three books)
sì-wǔmáo qián	(fourty or fifty cents)
bā-jiǔbǎikuài qián	(eight or nine hundred dollars)
shíyī-èrge	(eleven or twelve)

3. BAN - 'half' - has three distinct uses:

3.1 Bàn-M gives the sense of 'half a ...'

bànkuaì táng	(half a piece of candy)
bànfēn qián	(half a cent)
bànzhāng zhǐ	(half a sheet of paper)

3.2 NU-M-bàn gives the sense of '... and a half' (see duō)

sìkuaibàn qián	(\$4.50)
qīzhāngbàn zhǐ	(seven and a half sheets of paper)
wǔběnbàn shū	(five and a half books)

3.3 Yíbàn gives the sense of 'a half' or 'one half'. There are three common patterns for its use in this sense:

<u>V yíbàn</u> :	mǎi yíbàn	(buy half of it)
	kàn yíbàn	(read half of it)
	dǒng yíbàn	(understand half of it)

yíbàn SV, yíbàn bu-SV or yíbàn S-V, yíbàn S-bu-V:

Yíbàn duì, yíbàn búduì.
(Half is right and half is wrong.)

Yíbàn wǒ yào, yíbàn wǒ búyào.
(One half I want, one half I don't want.)

yǒu yíbàn followed by SV or by S-V:

Yǒu yíbàn hěn hǎo.
(There is one half which is excellent.)

Yǒu yíbàn tā bùxǐhuan.
(One half he doesn't like.)

4. ÈR AND LIǎNG. We note in Lesson 3 that there are two ways of saying 'two' in Chinese. In money expressions liǎng is commonly used for the larger units of a compound number and èr for the smaller.

liǎngqiān-èrbǎi	(2200)	sānkuai-èr	(\$3.20)
liǎngkuài-èrmáo	(\$2.20)	liǎngmáo-èr	(22 cents)

After líng, èr is used.

L. 6

5. DUŌ and SHǎO are SV, but restricted as to use:

5.1 They cannot modify N without the addition of an adverbial modifier.

Wrong: duō rén
shǎo qián

Right: hěn duō rén
bushǎo qián

6. TOTALIZING NUMBERS. Yígòng is used in the sense of altogether in adding up a series of numbers yígòng must be followed by a number. No verb is required, but shì and yǒu (there are) may be used.

Liǎngkuai-bàn, yíkuai-sì,
sānkuai-èrmáo-wǔ; yígòng
qíkuai-yímáo-wǔ.

2.50, 1.40, 3.25; all told 7.15

Yígòng yǒu wǔshiliùge rén.

There are 56 people altogether.

7. IMPERSONAL USE OF YǒU. When no subject is expressed before yǒu 'have', it may have the sense of 'there is' or 'there are'.

Yǒu yíge rén...
Méiyǒu hěn duō qián.

There is a person...
There isn't much money.

Yǒude has been introduced with the translation 'some'. Actually it means 'there are those who' and thus classifies as an impersonal use of yǒu.

8. USES OF XIǎNG. The verb xiǎng 'think' has the following uses:

8.1 Followed by S-V-O it has the sense of 'think that'.



Wǒ xiǎng tā zuò mǎimai.
(I think he is in business.)

Tā xiǎng wǒ búhuì zuò.
(He thought I didn't know how to do it.)
(He didn't think I knew how to do it.)

Wǒ xiǎng tā bùzhidào.
(I don't think he knows it.)

Note that the English idiom 'I don't think that...' translates into a positive expression in Chinese, the negative element being transferred to the verb in the sentence-object.

8.2 As an Auxiliary Verb followed by V-O it has the sense of 'is thinking of ...-ing', 'intends to' or 'is going to'.



Tā xiǎng xué Fǎguóhuà. (He is thinking of studying French.)
Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yíge. (I'm going to buy one.)

- 8.3 Followed by a noun it has the sense of 'think about' and in some cases may be as strong as 'long for' or 'be homesick for'.



Nǐ xiǎng shéi?
(Of whom are(were) you thinking?)

Háizi xiǎng tā péngyou.
(The child is homesick for his friend.)

- 8.4 Reduplicated it has the sense of 'think it over'.

Wǒ bùzhidào, wǒ xiǎngxiǎng.
(I don't know, I'll think it over.)

Nǐ xiǎngxiǎng, shì bushì tā?
(Think it over, is it he or isn't it?)

9. GÒU AS AN ADVERB - The SV gòu is used adverbially with the meaning of sufficiently as in:

Zhège zhuōzi búgòu dà.
(This table is not big enough.)

Gòu gāo búgòu gāo?
(Is it high enough?)

E. Liànxí - Exercises

1. MONETARY UNIT DRILL. Repeat all possible combinations in the following substitution table several times, giving primary stress to the NU and secondary stress to the N, treating the M as lightly as possible:

<u>NU</u>	<u>M</u> : (dollars) (dimes) (cents)	<u>N</u> (money)
yī(yì)	kuài	qián
liǎng	máo	
sān	fēn	
sì		
wǔ		
liù		
qī(qí)		
bā(bá)		
jiǔ		
shí		

2. ABBREVIATED MONETARY EXPRESSIONS. Words in parentheses in the following table may be omitted. Practice both the full and the concise forms until you can say each complete monetary expression (dollars-dimes-cents) without stopping between the measures.

<u>Dollars</u>	<u>Dimes</u>	<u>Cents</u> (of money)	
bànkuaì		(qián)	\$.50
yíkuaì	líng	wǔfēn (qián)	1.05
yíkuaì	yī(máo)	qián)	1.10
liǎngkuai	èr(máo)	qián)	2.20
sānkuai	sān(máo)	qián)	3.30
sìkuai	sì(máo)	liù(fēn qián)	4.46
wǔkuai	wǔmáo	qī(fēn qián)	5.57
liùkuai	liùmáo	bā(fēn qián)	6.68
qīkuai	qīmáo	jiǔ(fēn qián)	7.79
bākuai	bāmáo	sì(fēn qián)	8.84
jiǔkuai	jiǔ(máo)	qián)	9.90
shíkuai	bàn	(qián)	10.50
shíyīkuai		(qián)	11.00
shíèrkuai	líng	wǔ(fēn qián)	12.05
èrshíyīkuai	liǎngmáo	èr(fēn qián)	21.22
sānshíqīkuai	wǔ(máo)	qián)	37.50
wǔshíbākuai	líng	qī(fēn qián)	58.07
bāshíjiǔkuai	jiǔmáo	bā(fēn qián)	89.98
jiǔshíwǔkuai	bàn		95.50
yībǎikuai		(qián)	100.00

3. MONETARY SUMS ABOVE \$100 - Drill on these until you can say them smoothly.

<u>1,000s</u> (-qiān)	<u>100s</u> (-bǎi)	<u>10s</u> (-shí)	<u>1s</u>	<u>M</u>	<u>N</u>	
	yìbǎi	líng	wǔ	-kuai	qián	\$ 105
	èrbǎi	yīshí		-kuài		210
	sānbǎi	èrshí	bá	-kuai	qián	328
sìqiān				-kuai	qián	4,000
wǔqiān	líng	sānshí		-kuai	qián	5,030
liùqiān	sìbǎi	líng	liù	-kuài		6,406

4. NUMBERS INVOLVING BAN - Translate the following:

Into English

bànkuaì qián
kǎn yìbàn
zhèbàn
mǎi yìbàn
yìbēnbàn shū
yíkuaibàn qián

bànkuaì táng
nǎbàn
yìbàn guì, yìbàn búguì
yìbàn tā dòng, yìbàn tā bùdòng
yǒu yìbàn dōu tài gāo

Into Chinese

half a book
one-half
which half?
two dollars and a half
understand half
two and a half books

this half
half a piece of candy
sell half of them
half of them are busy
I want only half.
half of them are too expensive

5. Translate into Chinese:

1. How much is this Chinese picture?
2. How many pictures are you buying altogether?
3. One picture is 8 dollars, one is 7 dollars - 15 dollars all told.
4. Ten dollars is too much. I'll give you six dollars.
5. Do you sell pictures? I want to buy one.
6. Do you only want one?
7. The chairs are eight seventy-five each.
8. I'll give you 13 dollars for the two.
9. Here is a dollar. Please buy ten sheets of paper.

6. Transcript of the Dialogue. After studying the dialogue, take the transcript below and try to translate back from English to Chinese. Similarly, translate back from the sound recording of this dialogue.

Shopping

Buyer: Do you have pens?

Seller: Yes, what kind (from what country) would you like?

Buyer: How about my taking a look at both English and American makes.

Seller: Good. These two are British pens; these two are American pens - they're cheap and they're good.

Buyer: How much are they apiece?

Seller: The American pens are \$10.50; the British pens are more expensive \$12.75 each.

Buyer: I'll take the American pen. Do you sell Chinese books also?

Seller: We have a few, but not many. Do you know what the name of the book is?

Buyer: I'll have to think. There's a book called Chinese Paintings. Do you have it?

Seller: Please look at this; is this it? This book of pictures has to sell for more than 4200 in Chinese money, but in American money it's \$15.22. This is really a good book of paintings. China really has a lot fine things.

Buyer: Right, China does have many fine things. Well, a pen and a book - how much are they altogether?

Seller: All told \$26.49.

Buyer: \$26.49? That is not correct, is it?

Seller: You don't realize - there's three cents tax on a dollar's worth of goods.

Buyer: That's too much. I'll give you only \$22.50. Will you sell them?

L. 6

Seller: \$22.50 isn't enough. I'll sell them to you for \$23.00.

Buyer: O.K. (gives him the money) This is \$25.00.

Seller: I must give you \$2.00 - right?

Buyer: That's right.

Notes

DÌQÍKÈ - LESSON 7

AUXILIARY VERBS - VERB-OBJECT COMPOUNDS

What Do You Like to Do?

- | | |
|--|---|
| LI: Gāo Xiānsheng, nín ài chī Zhōngguó fàn ma? | Mr. Gao, do you like to eat Chinese food? |
| Gāo: Wǒ hěn ài chī. Wǒmen háizi yě dōu ài chī. | I love to eat it. Our children all love to eat it, too. |
| LI: Nín tàitai huì zuò Zhōngguó fàn búhuì? | Does your wife know how to cook Chinese food? |
| Gāo: Huì yidiǎnr. | A little. |
| LI: Nín háizi yě huì zuòfàn ma? | Can your children cook, too? |
| Gāo: Háizi búhuì zuòfàn. Tāmen jiù huì chīfàn! | The children can't cook. They only know how to eat! |
| LI: Nǐmen dōu huì shuō Zhōngguó huà ma? | Do you all know how to speak Chinese? |
| Gāo: Háizi huì shuō. Wǒ tàitai yě huì shuō. Wǒ jiù huì shuō yidiǎnr. | The children know how to. My wife does too. But I can only speak it a little. |
| LI: Nín tài kèqi! Zhōngguó zì nín néng xiě ma? | You're being too polite! Can you write Chinese characters? |
| Gāo: Bùnéng. Ōu, wǒ néng xiě 'yī, èr, sān' sānge zì! | No, I can't. Oh, I can write the three characters 'one, two, three'! |
| LI: Nǐmen ài chànggē ma? | Do you folks like to sing? |
| Gāo: Wǒmen hěn ài chàng. | We love to sing. |
| LI: Wǒmen xiànzài chàng yidiǎnr, hǎo bùhǎo? | How about singing a little now? |
| Gāo: Nǐmen yuànyì chàng shénme gē? | What kind of songs would you like to sing? |
| LI: Nǐmen huì chàng Zhōngguó gē ma? | Do you know how to sing Chinese songs? |
| Gāo: Huì. | Yes, we do. |
| LI: Hǎo, wǒmen kéyì chàng liǎnggè Zhōngguó gē. | Good, we might sing a couple of Chinese songs. |

VOCABULARY

xiànzài	MA: now, at present	néng	AV: can, be able to
fàn	N: food (cooked rice)	huì	AV: can, know how to
táng	N: sugar, candy	kéyi	AV: may, can, be permitted to
huà	N: speech (spoken words) language	yuànyi	AV: wish to, be willing to
zì	N: word (written character)	ài	V: love AV: like or love to
shì(qing)	N: affair, undertaking	chī	V: eat
mǎimai	N: business (buy-sell)	xiě	V: write
gē(r)	N: song	zuò	V: do, make, act part of
dàrén	N: adult, grownup	chàng	V: sing
zhēn	A: truly, really		
kèqi	SV: be polite, stand on ceremony		

PATTERN SENTENCES

I. AUXILIARY VERBS USED WITH VO COMPOUNDS

shuōhuà	talk (speak language)	chīfàn	eat (eat-food)
kànshū	read (look at-books)	zuòfàn	cook (make-food)
xiězì	write (write-words)	chànggē	sing (sing-songs)

S AV - VO

Pattern: Nǐ ài chànggē ma? Wǒ hěn ài chànggē.
Do you like to sing? I love to sing.

1. Xiǎo háizi dōu ài chànggē.
Dàrén yě ài chànggē. Shéi búài
chànggē?
All children like to sing. Grownups
like to sing too. Who doesn't
like to sing?
2. Zhāng Xiānsheng hěn ài kànshū.
Tā yě hěn ài xiězì. Kěshi tā
búài shuōhuà.
Mr. Zhāng loves to read. He also
loves to write. But he doesn't
like to talk.
3. Wáng Xiǎojie jiù ài kànshū. Tā
hěn búyuànyi zuòshì.
Miss Wang only likes to read. She
is very unwilling to work.
4. Rénrén dōu huì shuōhuà, kěshi
bùdōu huì kànshū.
Everybody can talk, but not
everybody can read.
5. Yǒude rén huì zuòfàn. Yǒude rén
búhuì. Kěshi rénrén dōu huì
chīfàn!
Some people know how to cook, some
don't. But everyone knows how to
eat!

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 6. Zhōngguo rén hěn néng zuòshì. | Chinese are very capable. |
| 7. Nàge rén zhēn huì shuōhuà! | That man certainly knows how to talk! |
| 8. Wǒmen xiànzài kěyǐ chīfàn ma? | May we eat now? |

II. VO COMPOUNDS WITH MODIFIED OBJECTS

S V Mod O

Pattern: Nǐ ài chàng shénme gē? Wǒ ài chàng Fǎguo gē.
What kind of songs do you like to sing? French songs.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Nǐ yuànyì chī shénme fàn? | What kind of food do you wish to eat? |
| 2. Nǐ yào búyào chī yìdiǎnr Èguo fàn? | Do you want to eat a little Russian food? |
| 3. Nǐ huì zuò Èguo fàn ma? | Do you know how to cook Russian food? |
| 4. Nǐ huì shuō Rìběn huà búhuì? | Can you speak Japanese? |
| 5. Nǐ huì xiě Zhōngguo zì búhuì? | Do you know how to write Chinese? |
| 6. Xiànzài nǐ néng kàn Zhōngguo bào ma? | Can you read Chinese newspapers now? |
| 7. Nǐ néng zuò zhège bǐnèng? | Can you do this? |
| 8. Zhège huà kěyǐ shuō ma? | Can one say this? |

III. hao AS AN ADVERBIAL PREFIX

Pattern: Zhōngguo fàn hǎochī, kěshi bùhǎozuò.
Chinese food is good to eat, but not easy to make.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Zhōngguo huà hěn hǎoshuō, kěshi Zhōngguo zì bùhǎoxiě. | Chinese is very easy to speak, but Chinese characters are not easy to write. |
| 2. Zhège shì(qing) zhēn bùhǎozuò. | This affair is surely hard to carry through. |
| 3. Tā nàge mǎimai bùhǎozuò. | That business of his is not easy to carry on. |
| 4. Tāde huà hěn hǎodǒng. | He is very easy to understand. |
| 5. Tā shuō zhèběn shū hěn hǎomài. | He says this book is very easy to sell. |
| 6. Nǐmen nà liǎngge hái'izi zhēn hǎokàn! | Those two children of yours are certainly attractive looking. |

L. 7

7. Yǒude Měiguó gēr bùhǎochàng. Some American songs are not easy to sing.
8. Xiànzài yǒude dōngxi bùhǎomǎi. Some things are difficult to buy now.

NOTES

1. AUXILIARY VERBS (AV): An auxiliary verb immediately precedes the verb which it aids. (See Lesson II, Note 4) When the context makes the meaning clear, the main verb is often omitted, as in English:

Nǐ huì shuō Zhōngguó huà ma? Can you speak Chinese?
Wǒ huì shuō yídiǎnr. Yes, a little.

2. NÉNG, HUÌ, AND KÉYI: The English auxiliary verb 'can' is freely used in common speech to cover the meanings 'can', 'may' and 'know how to'. Similar looseness in use is common in Chinese. Essentially, néng implies physical ability or possibility, huì acquired ability or 'know how', while kéyì implies permissibility.

3. VERB-OBJECT COMPOUNDS (VO): Some verbs in Chinese are commonly associated with generalized objects, which together form single concepts in the Western mind, and translate into single English intransitive verbs. Such are called VO compounds.

In English these generalized objects are more often implied, whereas in Chinese they are always expressed, unless they have just appeared in the immediate context. For example, in English one says: I want to eat, but in Chinese it becomes: I want to eat food. (Wǒ yào chī-fàn.)

When a specific object is indicated, it replaces the generalized object, and is never used together with it. For instance, one says: Wǒ yào chī táng, for 'I want to eat candy', NEVER Wǒ yào chīfàn táng.

Like any verb and its object, the object within a VO compound may be modified:

Wǒ ài chànggē. I like to sing.
Wǒ ài chàng Yīngguó gē. I like to sing English songs.
NEVER Wǒ ài chànggē Yīngguó gē.

4. APPOSITION: Two or more nouns may stand in apposition to one another:

Wǒmen Měiguó rén dōu ài chī táng. We Americans like to eat candy.
Tāmen liǎngge rén dōu yǒu qián. Both of them have money.
Lǐ Xiānsheng zhège rén shì yíge hǎo rén. Mr. Li (just mentioned) is a good man.
'Yī, èr, sān' sānge zì hěn hǎo xiě. The three characters 'yī, èr, sān' are very easy to write.
Zhège, Zhōngguó huà jiào shénme? What is this called in Chinese?

5. ADVERBIAL FUNCTION OF STATIVE VERBS: In addition to their verbal and adjectival uses, many stative verbs function as adverbs, as in the following sentences:

Nimen xiǎo háizi zhēn hǎokàn.
 Nàge gēr bùhǎochàng.
 Zhōngguó fàn búdá hǎozuò.
 Fàn gòu chí ma?

Your child is really pretty.
 That song is not easy to sing.
 Chinese food is not so easy to make.
 Is there enough to eat?

DÌBĀKÈ - LESSON 8

MODIFICATION OF NOUNS: BY NOUNS AND STATIVE VERBS

Old Zhao, The Hatmaker

Wǒ yǒu yíge lǎo péngyou, xìng Zhao. Rénrén dōu xǐhuan tā, shuō tā shì yíge hǎo rén. Lǎo Zhao zhege rén hěn yǒuyìsi. Tā yě hěn néng zuòshì.	I have an old friend named Zhao. Everybody likes him, and says he is a good man. 'Old Zhao' is a most interesting person, and he is very capable too.
Tā yǒu yíge hěn dàde mǎimai. Tā dōu mài shénme? Tā jiù mài màozi. Tā mài nánrénde màozi, tā yě mài nǚrénde màozi.	He has a big business. What all does he sell? He only sells hats. He sells men's hats, and he also sells women's hats.
Lǎo Zhao yě huì zuò màozi. Dàrénde, xiǎo háizide, tā dōu huì zuò.	Old Zhao also knows how to make hats, both for adults and for children.
Tā yǒu yíge gēge, liǎngge dìdi. Tāmen yě dōu huì zuò màozi.	He has an older brother, and two younger brothers. They all know how to make hats, too.
Rénrén dōu xǐhuan dài tāde màozi. Tāmen shuō Lǎo Zhao's màozi hǎo, yě piányi.	Everyone likes to wear his hats. They say Old Zhao's hats are good and inexpensive, too.
Tāde màozi dōu mài duōshao qián? Dàde xiǎode dōu mài wǔkuai qián yíge.	What do his hats sell for? Big ones and little ones sell for \$5.00 apiece.
Wǔkuai qián zhēn piányi!	Five dollars is really cheap.

VOCABULARY

yìsi	N: idea, meaning	fùmǔ	N: parents
xiāngxia	N: country (rural)	gēge	N: elder brother
màozi	N: hat	dìdi	N: younger brother
fùqin	N: father	jiějie	N: elder sister
mǔqin	N: mother	mèimei	N: younger sister
xuésheng	N: student	méiyìsi	SV: be dull, flat
duō	SV: be much, many	dài	V: wear, put on, (hat, watch, etc.)
shǎo	SV: be little, in quantity few	yǒu	V: there is or are
piányi	SV: be inexpensive		

lǎo	SV: be old (in years)	xué	V: study, learn AV: learn to, study how to
xīn	SV: be new		
jiù	SV: be old (not new)	xǐhuan	AV: like to enjoy
yǒuyìsi	SV: be interesting	-de	P: (N and V suffix indicating modification.)

PATTERN SENTENCES

I. NOUNS MODIFIED BY OTHER NOUNS

(a) more often without -de

N - N

Pattern: Wǒ fùqin hěn ài zuòshì. My father loves to work.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Xiāngxia rén dōu méiqián ma? | Are all country people poor? |
| 2. Wǒmen zuò yidiǎnr Zhōngguo fàn, hǎo bùhǎo? | How about our making a little Chinese food? |
| 3. Nǐ fùqin yǒu Zhōngguo xìng méiyǒu? | Does your father have a Chinese surname? |
| 4. Zhè shì shénme zhǐ? Shì Déguo zhǐ. | What kind of paper is this? German paper. |
| 5. Tā gēge dìdi dōu yào xué (shuō) Zhōngguo huà. | His elder and younger brothers want to learn (to speak) Chinese. |

(b) usually with -de

Nde - N

Patterns: Wǒ mǔqinde màozi hěn hǎokàn. My mother's hat is very pretty.
 Nǚrénde màozi dōu hǎokàn ma? Are all women's hats pretty?
 Wǒ yào yímáo qiánde táng. I want a dime's worth of candy.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Nǐde yìsi hěn duì. | You have the right idea. |
| 2. Wǒ bùdǒng nǐde huà. | I don't understand what you are saying. |
| 3. Zhè shì shéide yìsi, nǐ zhīdao ma? | Whose idea is this, do you know? |
| 4. Nàge xuéshengde jiějie huì chànggē, kěshi tāde mèimei búhuì. | That student's big sister knows how to sing, but his little sister doesn't. |

L. 8

5. Zhōngguode xiāngxia rén dài màozi búdài? Do the country people of China wear hats?
6. Yikuai qiánde táng gòu ma? Will a dollar's worth of sugar be enough?

(c) same with modified nouns understood

Patterns: Zhège shì shéide? Shì nǐde ma? Búshì.

Who does this belong to? To you? No, it's not mine.

Nǎge shì wǒde? Zhège shì nǐde.

Which one is mine? This one is yours.

1. Zhège bǐ shì shéide? Shì yíge xuéshengde, búshì xiānshengde. To whom does this pen belong? It belongs to a student, not to the teacher.
2. Nà liǎngzhāng huà shì shénme rénde? Wǒ bùzhidào. To whom do those two pictures belong? I don't know.
3. Nǎge shì nǐde? Zhège shì wǒde, nǎge shì nǐde. Which is yours? This is mine, that is yours.
4. Zhège bùǎi shì nǐde ma? Isn't this yours also?
5. Nǐ mǎi jǐkuai qiánde zhǐ? Wǒ mǎi sānkuai qiánde. How many dollar's worth of paper are you getting? I'm getting \$3.00 worth.

II. NOUNS MODIFIED BY STATIVE VERBS

(a) more often without -de (Simple and Unqualified SVs)

SV - N

Pattern: Wǒ yǒu yíge hǎo péngyou. I have a good friend.

1. Wǒ mèimei xǐhuan dài xīn màozi. My younger sister likes to wear new hats.
2. Wǒ dìdi xǐhuan mǎi jiù shū. My younger brother likes to buy used books.
3. Nǚrén bùnéng dài dà biǎo. Women can't wear big watches.
4. Nǐmen yǒu hǎo zhǐ méiyǒu? Do you have any good paper?
5. Hǎo rén bùduō. Zhège huà duì búduì? Good people are not numerous. Is this correct?
6. Tā jiějie shì ge hǎo xuésheng. His elder sister is a good student.

(b) usually with -de

SV de - N

Pattern: Méiqiánde rén dōu xǐhuan tā. Poor people all like him.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Èguo shì yíge hěndàde guó. | Russia is a very large country. |
| 2. Tā tàitai jìù xǐhuan dài hǎokàn-de màozi. | His wife only likes to wear pretty hats. |
| 3. Búduìde shì tā búzuò. | He doesn't do improper things. |
| 4. Zhège hěnxixiǎode dōngxì jiào shénme? Wǒ bùzhidào. | What is this tiny thing called? I don't know. |
| 5. Zhōngguó méiyǒu hěnduō (de) Rìběn rén. (See note 5) | There are not very many Japanese in China. |
| 6. Měiguó yǒu bùshǎo (de) Zhōngguó rén (See note 5) | There are quite a few Chinese in America. |

(c) same with modified nouns understood

SVde(N)

Nde(N)

Pattern: Zhège xiǎode shì wǒde, nàge dàde shì tāde.
This small one is mine, that large one is his.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Nǐ yào mǎi dàde, yào mǎi xiǎode? | Do you want to buy a big one or a little one? |
| 2. Dàde piányi, xiǎode guì. | The large one is cheap, the small one is expensive. |
| 3. Zhège hǎokànde shì tāde, bùhǎokànde yě shì tāde! | This goodlooking one is his, and the ugly one is his also! |
| 4. Xiǎo biǎo hǎo, kěshì xiǎode guì. | A small watch is better, but a small one is more expensive. |
| 5. Zhèzhāng huà shì xīnde, nàzhāng shì jiùde. | This painting is a new one, that is an old one. |

NOTES

1. MODIFICATION: One of the basic principles of Chinese word order is that the modifier precedes the modified. This holds true whether one or both are single words, phrases or clauses. Position alone is sufficient to indicate the relationship of modification. The suffix -de plays an essential part in modification. Practically any modifying element can take -de, but not all do, as will be seen below. In general, modifying elements of more than one syllable usually take -de.

2. NOUNS MODIFIED BY OTHER NOUNS:

- (a) without -de: Certain nouns between which there is a particularly close personal relation often omit -de:

wǒ péngyou, nín tàitai, wǒmen háizi, Lǐ Xiānsheng fùmǔ, etc.

Modifying nouns of place usually omit -de:

Měiguó rén, Zhōngguó huàr, Yīngguó péngyou, etc.

Two nouns which through usage have become fused into a single word omit -de. In English one says 'footstep', never 'foot's step', and seldom 'step of the foot'. Innumerable nouns exist in Chinese which were formed this way, as for example:

fànqian (food money), kèren (guest), fànzhūō (dining table),
guógē (national anthem), etc.

- (b) with -de: Nouns modifying inanimate objects usually take -de:

wǒde biǎo, tāde shū, shéide qián?, Lǐ Xiānshengde bǐ, etc.

Modifying expressions of value usually take -de:

wǔmáo qiándé táng, yībǎikuai qiándé shū, etc.

3. NOUNS MODIFIED BY STATIVE VERBS: Stative verbs in their adjectival function are used before nouns to modify them.

- (a) without -de: Simple unqualified stative verbs, in their adjectival function, seldom take -de:

dà guó, xīn mǎozǐ, xiǎo biǎo, hǎo rén, lǎo rén
lǎo tàitai, máng rén, etc.

Through association and usage, some stative verbs have become attached to certain nouns, so that they practically function as one word:

dàrén (adult), xiǎorén (rascal, bad character), xiǎoháizi (child),
dàgē (eldest brother), dàjiě (eldest), etc.

- (b) with -de: When a stative verb is preceded by some qualifying element, -de is always added:

hěn lǎode rén, bùhǎode háizi
hǎokànde huàr, méiyìside shū, etc.

4. MODIFIED NOUNS UNDERSTOOD: When the context makes it perfectly clear what is meant, the noun modified may be understood, as in English:

Zhè shì shéide? Shì wǒde. Whose is this? It's mine.
Zhōngguó shì Zhōngguó rénde. China belongs to the Chinese.

5. DUO AND SHAO: These two words behave somewhat differently from other stative verbs. First of all, in their adjectival function, they never appear without an adverbial modifier. Then again, in their qualified form they may or may not take -de.

hěnduō (de) rén, bùshǎo (de) dōngxi, etc. NEVER duō rén,

shǎo dōngxi, and NEVER duōde rén or shǎode dōngxi.

6. IMPERSONAL USE OF YOU: When no subject is expressed before yǒu (have), it becomes impersonal, and is equivalent to 'there is' or 'there are'. The same holds true when a place word stand before yǒu:

Yǒu yige rén.

There is (or was) a man.

Zhōngguo yě yǒu hǎo biǎo.

There are good watches in China, too.

7. MEI SHORT FOR MEIYOU: The negative prefix to yǒu (have) is often used instead of the full form méiyǒu:

Wǒ méi qián.

I don't have (any) money.

Tāde huà méiyìsi.

There is no point to what he says.

DÌJIŪKÈ - LESSON 9

MODIFICATION OF NOUNS: BY CLAUSES

Mr. Zhang's Two Daughters

Wǒ yǒu liǎngge Zhōngguó péngyou.
Yíge xìng Zhāng, yíge xìng Chén.
Xǐng Zhāngde nàge péngyou yǒu
liǎngge nǚer. Tāmen dōu hěn
cōngmíng.

I have two Chinese friends. One is
named Zhang and one Chen. The
friend who is named Zhang has two
daughters. They are both very
bright.

Zhāng Xiānsheng hěn huì huàhuàr.
Tā huàde huàr rénren dōu xǐhuan.
Dàxiǎojie yě xiǎng xué huàhuàr.
Tā shuō: "Bàba, huàhuàr zuì
yǒuyìsi. Wǒ xiǎng xué yìdiǎnr.
Nín néng jiāo wǒ ma?" Tā fùqīn
shuō: "Wǒ huàde bùhǎo. Yǒu
yíwèi Chén Xiānsheng, tā huàde
hěn hǎo. Nǐ qǐng tā jiāo nǐ,
bùhǎo ma?"

Mr. Zhang knows how to paint.
Everyone likes the pictures he
paints. The elder daughter
wanted to learn how to paint, too.
She said: "Papa, painting is most
interesting. I'd like to study
it a little. Could you teach me?"
Her father said: "I don't paint
well. There is a Mr. Chen who
paints very well. How about
asking him to teach you?"

Èrxǎojie shuō Zhōngguó xuéshēng zuì
ài xuéde shì Yīngwén. Tā xiǎng
jiāo tāmen, kěshì tāde Yīngwén
bútài hǎo. Tā qǐng tā mǔqīn jiāo
tā. Tā mǔqīn shuō: "Wǒde Yīngwén
yě bútài hǎo. Zuì hǎo, nǐ qǐng
jiāo Yīngwénde nàwei wàiguó
xiānsheng jiāo nǐ."

The second daughter says what
Chinese students like most to
study is English. She wants to
teach them, but her English is
not too good. She asked her
mother to teach her. Her mother
said: "My English is not too
good either. The best thing for
you to do is to ask the foreign
gentleman who teaches English to
teach you."

VOCABULARY

-xiē	M: quantity of, several	cháng(cháng)	A: often, usually, always
-wèi	M: (polite for persons)	nán	SV: be difficult, hard
érzi	N: son	róngyi	SV: be simple, easy
nǚer	N: daughter	cōngmíng	SV: be intelligent, clever
wàiguó	N: foreign country	hǎotīng	SV: be good to listen to, pretty
Yīngwén	N: English language	xiǎng	V: think, think about, desire
chá	N: tea		AV: consider, plan to, want to
shuǐ	N: water	niàn	V: read aloud, study
jiǔ	N: wine or liquor		
zuì	A: the most, -est		

jiāo	V: teach	niànshū	VO: study, go to school
huà	V: draw or paint	jiāoshū	VO: teach
hē	V: drink		

PATTERN SENTENCES

I. CLAUSES IN SENTENCES OF A GENERAL NATURE (OFTEN WITH dou)

Patterns: (1-5) Néng kànshūde rén yě dōu néng xiězi ma?

Are all who can read able to write too?

(lit. can readde people also all can write?)

(6-10) Tā shuōde huà zuì yǒuyìsi.

What he says is extremely interesting.

(lit. he-saysde things most have meaning)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Huì shuō Zhōngguó huà de Měiguó rén bùshǎo, kěshì huì xiě Zhōngguó zì de bùduō. | Quite a few Americans know how to speak Chinese, but not many can write Chinese. |
| 2. Ài hējiǔ de rén chángcháng méiqián. | Those who like to drink are often without money. |
| 3. Niànshūde dōu shì xuésheng ma? | Are all who study students? |
| 4. Zuòmǎimaide dōu yǒuqián ma? | Are all business people rich? |
| 5. Xīhuan tā nǚr de rén bùshǎo. | Quite a few people like his daughter. |
| 6. Tā shuōde huà nǐ dōu dǒng ma? | Do you understand all he says? |
| 7. Wǒ hěn ài kàn tā zuòde shū. | I love to read the books he writes. |
| 8. Nǐmen niànde shū nán bunán? | Is what you are studying difficult? |
| 9. Wǒ shuōde duì búduì? | Is what I say (or said) correct? |
| 10. Tāmen chàngde shì shénme gē? | What song are they singing? |

II. CLAUSES IN SENTENCES OF A SPECIFIC NATURE (ALWAYS WITH SPECIFIER)

Patterns: (1-4) Chànggēde nàge rén xìng Lǐ.

The person who is singing is named Lǐ.

(lit. sing-songde the-person is named Lǐ)

(5-8) Tā chàngde naxie gē zhēn hǎotīng!

The songs he is singing are certainly pretty!

(lit. he-singsde the-several-songs are truly pretty)

(9-10) Nàge mǎitángde shì xiāngxià rén.

The (or that) candydealer is a countryman.

(lit. that sell-candyde is a country person)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Mǎi zhōngbiǎo de nage lǎo xiānsheng hěn cōngming. | The old gentleman who sells clocks and watches is very intelligent. |
| 2. Jiāo Yīngwén de nawei xiǎojie xīng Chén. | The lady who teaches English is named Chen. |
| 3. Qǐng nǐ chīfàn de nawei xiānsheng shì bushi Zhāng xiānsheng? | Is the gentleman who invited you to a meal Mr. Zhang. |
| 4. Chànggēde naxie hái zi dōu shì wǒde xuésheng. | All of the children (there) who are singing are my students. |
| 5. Wǒ yào kànkàn nǐ mǎide nage xīn bǐ. | I want to have a look at the new pen you bought. |
| 6. Wǒ xiànzài dǎide zhege màozi tài nánkàn! | The hat I am wearing now is terrible looking! |
| 7. Tā shuōde naxie huà búduì. | What he is saying is not correct. |
| 8. Nínide nǚer xiěde naxie zì zhēn hǎo! | The characters your daughter wrote are certainly fine! |
| 9. Nàge mǎibào de xiànzài hěn yǒu qián. | The (or that) newsdealer is now very rich. |
| 10. Nà liǎngge zuǒfānde, yíge jiào Lǎo Zhāng, yíge jiào Lǎo Lǐ. | Of the (or those) two cooks, one is called Old Zhang, and one Old Li. |

FLUENCY DRILLS

Háizi hěn cōngming.
 Xiǎo háizi hěn cōngming.
 Nàge xiǎo háizi hěn cōngming.
 Niànshūde nage xiǎo háizi hěn cōngming.
 Niàn Zhōngguo shū de nage xiǎo háizi hěn cōngming.
 Niàn Zhōngguo shū de na liǎngge xiǎo háizi hěn cōngming.
 Niàn Zhōngguo shū de na liǎngge xiǎo háizi zhēn cōngming.

Tāde Yīngwén hǎo.
 Tāde Yīngwén hěn hǎo.
 Wáng Xiānshengde Yīngwén hěn hǎo.
 Nàwei Wáng Xiānshengde Yīngwén hěn hǎo.
 Jiāoshūde nàwei Wáng Xiānshengde Yīngwén hěn hǎo.
 Jiāo Yīngwén de nàwei Wáng Xiānshengde Yīngwén hěn hǎo.
 Jiāo Yīngwén de nàwei Wáng Xiānshengde Yīngwén zuì hǎo.

NOTES

1. MODIFYING CLAUSES, like nouns and stative verbs, precede the nouns which they modify, and always take the suffix -de. There are no Chinese equivalents for the relative pronouns 'who', 'which', and 'that'. For example, in English one says: 'the house that Jack built', whereas in Chinese it is 'the-Jack-built-house'. (Compare English expressions such as 'a self-made man', 'home-cooked meals', etc.)

shuōhuàde rén the person who is talking (lit. say-thingsde person)

tā shuōde huà the things which he says (lit. he-saysde things)

2. RELATION OF CLAUSES TO OTHER QUALIFYING ELEMENTS: When a noun is already specified, or both specified and numbered (see Lesson 4) the modifying clause usually stands in front of these specifying elements. Compare the following expressions:

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) nàge rén
shuōhuàde nage rén | that man
the man who is speaking
(say-things <u>de</u> the-man) |
| (2) nàwei xiānsheng
jiāo Yīngwén de nàwei
xiānsheng | that gentleman (or teacher)
the gentleman who teaches English
(teach-English <u>de</u> the-gentleman) |
| (3) zhè liǎngge hái
niànsūde zhè liǎngge
hái | these two children
the two children who are studying
(study-books <u>de</u> the-two-children) |
| (4) nàxiè xuésheng
chànggēde nàxiè xuésheng | those students
the students who are singing
(sing-songs <u>de</u> the-several-students) |
| (5) zhège biǎo
wǒ zhège biǎo
wǒ mǎide zhège biǎo | this watch
this watch of mine
the watch (here) that I bought
(I-bought <u>de</u> the-watch) |
| (6) nàzhāng huà
nǐ nàzhāng huà
nǐ huàde nàzhāng huà | that painting
that painting of yours
the picture that you painted
(you-painted <u>de</u> the-picture) |
| (7) nà liǎngkuài qián
nǐ gěi wǒ de nà liǎng-
kuài qián | those two dollars
the two dollars that you gave me
(you-gave-me <u>de</u> the-two-dollars) |

L. 9

(8) nàxiē shì(qīng)
nǐ wèn wǒ de nàxiē shì

those affairs (or matters)
the several things you asked me about
(you-ask-mede the-several-matters)

Note that the specifiers in the above expressions have more the force of the English 'the', than the stronger 'that' or 'those'. They receive no stress in speaking.

3. CLAUSES BECOME NOUNS: A few modifying clauses, which describe a more less permanent condition or aspect, have become fused into single words which function as nouns. These correspond to certain English nouns ending in -er, etc.:

màishūde bookseller	zuòmǎimaide business man
màibàode newsdealer	zuòfànde cook
màitángde candy seller	yàofànde beggar

Since these expressions are equivalent to nouns, they may be specified and/or numbered in the same manner as other nouns: Nàge màibàode xìng Zhāng. The (or that) newsdealer is named Zhang. Tāmen yǒu liǎngge zuòfànde. They have two cooks.

There are more formal terms for many of these descriptive expressions, as for example: chúzi for zuòfànde, shāngren for zuòmǎimaide, etc.

4. REDUPLICATION OF VERBS: Verbs are sometimes reduplicated. This often gives a casual touch to the sense. Sometimes yi (one, a) is inserted between the two verbs:

kànkān have or take a look	xiǎngyixiǎng think it over
wènwen make an inquiry	xuéyixué put a little study in on it

DÌSHÍKÈ - LESSON 10

EXISTENCE AND LOCATION

Where Mr. Li Lives and Works

- A: Lǐ Xiānsheng, nín jiā zài nǎr? Mr. Li, where is your home?
B: Zài Nánjīng. In Nanjing.
A: Zài chéng lǐtōu ma? Inside the city?
B: Bù, zài chéng wàitōu. No, outside.
A: Chéng wàitōu shénme dìfang? Whereabouts outside the city?
B: Chéng wàitōu yǒu yíge xuéxiào. There is a school outside the city.
Wǒmen jiā zài nàge xuéxiào hòutōu. Our home is just behind the school.
A: Nín zài nàge xuéxiàoli jiāoshù ma? Do you teach in that school?
B: Bù. Wǒ shì ge zuòmǎimaide. No, I am a business man.
A: Nímende pùzi zài nǎr? Where is your shop?
B: Zài chéng lǐtōu. Wǒmende pùzi hěn xiǎo. Inside the city. Our shop is very small.
A: Nín tài kèqi! Nín cháng zài jiā chīfàn ma? You're being too polite! Do you usually eat at home?
B: Wǒ búzài jiā chī. No, I don't eat at home.
A: Wèishénme? Why not?
B: Yīnwei pùzilide shì tài duō. Because there's too much work at the shop.
A: Nín zài nǎr chīfàn? Where do you eat?
B: Wǒmen pùzi qiántou yǒu yíge xiǎo fànguǎnr. Wǒ cháng zài nǎr chīfàn. There is a small restaurant in front of our shop. I often eat there.

VOCABULARY

wèishénme	MA: why? (for what reason)	wàitōu	N: outside
yīnwei	MA: because (of), for	qiántōu	N: front
shàngtōu	N: above, top	hòutōu	N: back
xiàtōu	N: below, bottom	dīxia	N: underneath
lītōu	N: inside	zhèr	N: here

L. 10

nǎr	N: there	pùzi	N: store
nǎr	N: where?	-pù	N: -store, -shop
jiā	N: home, family	fànguǎnr	N: restaurant (food-eating-place)
fángzi	N: house, building	zài	V: be at, in or on CV: at, in, or on
lóu	N: storied building	ne	P: (sentence suffix indicating continuance of action in positive statements)
lóushang	N: upstairs		
wūzi	N: room		
dìfang	N: place		
chéng	N: city		
xuéxiào	N: school		

PATTERN SENTENCES

I. POSITIONAL NOUNS BEFORE yǒu TO INDICATE EXISTENCE

Pattern: PosN yǒu N
Zhuōzishang yǒu shū. There are books on the table.

Zhèr yǒu fànguǎnr méiyǒu? Is there a restaurant here?

1. Chéng wàitōu méiyǒu fànguǎnr. There are no restaurants outside the city.
2. Zhuōzi dīxia yǒu bùshǎo dōngxi. There are quite a few things under the table.
3. Jiāli yǒu rén méiyǒu? Is there anybody home?
4. Nimen xuéxiào yǒu jǐwèi xiānsheng? Yǒu duōshǎo xuésheng? How many teachers are there in your school? How many students?
5. Nimen jiāli yǒu duōshǎo rén? How many are there in your family?
6. Zhōngguóde xiāngxià yǒu xuéxiào méiyǒu? Are there any schools in the country districts of China?
7. Nǎr yǒu fànguǎnr? Where is there a restaurant?

II. zài WITH POSITIONAL NOUNS TO INDICATE LOCATION

N zài PosN

Pattern: Wǒmen jiā zài chéng wàitōu. Our home is outside the city.
Nimende pùzi zài nǎr? Where is your store?

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Wōmen xiǎng mǎide nage fángzi
zai xiāngxia. | The house we are thinking of buying
is in the country. |
| 2. Háizi dōu zai wàitou ne. | The children are all outside. |
| 3. Zhāng Xiānsheng búzai zhèr, tā
zai wàiguó. | Mr. Zhang is not here, he is abroad. |
| 4. Tāmen dōu zai lóushang ne.
Xiàtou méiyǒu rén. | They are all upstairs. There is no
one down below. |
| 5. Xiānsheng zài jiā ma? Zài jiā. | Is the 'mister' at home? Yes. |
| 6. Wǒde bǐ zai nǎr? Zai zhèr ne. | Where is my pen? It's here. |
| 7. Shéi zai qiántoude wūzili? | Who is in the front room? |

III. zài AS A CO-VERB AS SETTING FOR MAIN ACTION

CV - PosN V(O)

Pattern: Wǒ bucháng zai fànguǎnrli chīfàn.

I don't often eat in a restaurant.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Tāmen zai nàge wūzili chīfàn ne. | They are in that room eating. |
| 2. Háizimen dōu zai chéng lītou
niànshū. | The children all go to school
inside the city (downtown). |
| 3. Nín zai nǎr zuòshì? Zai Nánjīng. | Where do you work? In Nanjing. |
| 4. Nín zai Nánjīng zuò shénme? Wǒ
zai nǎr jiāoshū. | What do you do in Nanjing. I teach
there. |
| 5. Qǐng nín zai wǒmen jiāli chī
yidiǎnr dōngxī. | Have a little something to eat in
our home. |
| 6. Nǐ xiànzài zai nàge pùzi zuòshì? | Which shop are you working at now? |

IV. ADDITIONAL SENTENCES WITH POSITIONAL NOUNS

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Bào shang shuō shénme? | What does the paper say? |
| 2. Nín shì nǎrde rén? | Where are you from? |
| 3. Zhuōzi dīxiade dōngxī dōu shì
shéide? | Whose are all the things under the
table? |
| 4. Pùzi qiántoude nawei xiānsheng
xìng Zhào. | The gentleman in (the) front of the
store is named Zhao. |
| 5. Wǒmen zhege xuéxiàolide xuésheng
yìbàn shì nǚde. | Half of the students in our school
are women. |

L. 10

6. Zhèrde rén bucháng kàn bào. The people here don't often read the paper.
7. Fángzi hòutoude nage qìchē shì nǐde ma? Shì. Is the car at the back of the house yours? Yes.

FLUENCY DRILL

Wǒde biǎo zai nǎr?
Wǒ nage biǎo zai nǎr?
Wǒde nage biǎo zai nǎr?
 Zai yǐzishang.
Nínde biǎo zai yǐzishang.
Nín nage biǎo zai yǐzishang.
Nínde nage biǎo zai yǐzishang.
 Zai nǎge yǐzishang?
 Zai nage dà yǐzishang.
 Zai nǎge dà yǐzishang.
 Zai hòutou nage dà yǐzishang.
 Zai wūzi hòutoude nage dà yǐzishang.
Nínde biǎo zai wūzi hòutoude nage dà yǐzishang.
Nín nage biǎo zai wūzi hòutoude nage dà yǐzishang.
Nínde nage biǎo zai wūzi hòutoude nage dà yǐzishang.

Xièxie!

NOTES

1. POSITIONAL NOUNS: This lesson introduces a number of nouns which indicate position, such as lǐtòu (inside), qiántòu (in front), zhèr (here), etc. These words may be used alone like any other noun:

Shàngtòu yǒu shū There are books on top. (lit. topside has books)

Háizi dōu zai wàitòu. The children are all outside.

Qiántòude naxie rén dōu shì shéi? Who are all those people in front?
(lit. frontde the-several-people all are who?)

2. POSITIONAL SUFFIXES: Positional nouns may also be suffixed to other nouns. When the resulting position is familiar one, -tòu is often dropped. This is more often the case with shàngtòu and lǐtòu than with some of the others:

Nàběn shū zai zhuōzishang. That book is on the table. (lit. is on table-top)

Yǐzishangde zhege màozi shì shéide? Whose hat is this on the chair?
(lit. chair-topde the-hat is whose?)

3. EXISTENCE WITH yǒu: When a positional noun precedes the verb yǒu (used in its impersonal sense of 'there is'), it signifies that 'at x there is y':

Wūzi hòutou yǒu bushǎo yǐzi.	There are quite a few chairs at the back of the room.
Wūzili yǒu sānge rén.	There are three people in the room.
Wǒmen jiāli méiyǒu xiǎo hái.	There are no children in our home.
Zhōngguó xiànzài méiyǒu hěnduō Rìběn rén.	There aren't very many Japanese in China now.

4. LOCATION WITH zài: When a positional noun follows the verb zài (be located at, in or on), it signifies that 'y is located at x':

Nín de shū zài yǐzishàng.	Your book is on the chair.
Háizi zài nǎr? Zài wàitōu ne.	Where are the children. Outside.
Nín de biǎo zài wǒ jiāli.	Your watch is at my house.
Wǒ fùmǔ dōu zài Yīngguó ne.	My parents are in England.

5. CO-VERBS (CV): A co-verb indicates a relationship between a noun and the main verb. It functions like an English preposition, and never receives stress in speaking. The co-verb and its object always precede the main verb, and form a setting for the action of the main verb:

Tā zài Zhōngguó jiāoshū.	He teaches in China. (lit. he in-China teaches)
Wǒmen zài zhèr xué Zhōngguó huà.	We are studying Chinese here. (lit. at-here studying Chinese)
Chén Tàitai zài jiāli zuǒfàn ne.	Mrs. Chen is at home cooking.

6. CONTINUANCE WITH ne: When it is desired to stress the fact that the action of the verb is going on at the moment of speaking, the particle ne is added to the end of the sentence:

Tāmen xiànzài chīfàn ne.	They are eating now.
Lǐ Xiānsheng zài xuéxiàoli jiāoshū ne.	Mr. Li is at the school teaching.
Nǐ zuò shénme ne? Huàhuàr ne.	What are you doing? Drawing.

7. NAMES OF CITIES OR COUNTRIES AFTER zài never take the positional suffix lǐtōu or -li. For example, one says zài Zhōngguó, NEVER zài Zhōngguó lǐtōu, or zài Zhōngguóli.

Certain other particularized nouns after zài sometimes drop the positional suffix -li:

Xiānsheng búzài jiā.	The 'man of the house' is not at home.
Háizi zài xuéxiào ne.	The child is at school.
Wǒmen zài nǎge fànguǎnr chīfàn?	At which restaurant shall we eat?

DÌSHÍYÍKÈ - LESSON 11

MOTION AND DIRECTION - CONVEYANCE AND PURPOSE

A Projected Trip To New York

- | | |
|---|--|
| A: Nimen dao nǎr qu? | Where are you going? |
| B: Wōmen dao Niūyue qu. | We're going to New York. |
| A: Nimen zuo huǒchē qù ma? | Are you going by train? |
| B: Bù, wōmen zuo qìchē. | No, we're going by car. |
| A: Wèishénme búzuo fēiji? | Why don't you go by plane? |
| B: Cóng zhèr dao Niūyue méiyǒu fēiji. | There are no planes from here to New York. |
| A: Nimen dao nǎr qù zuò shénme? | What are you going to do there? |
| B: Wōmen qù kàn liǎngge péngyou.
Wōmen yě xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎn dōngxi. | We are going to see a couple of friends. We are also thinking of buying a few things. |
| A: Nimen péngyou zài Niūyue shénme dìfang? | Whereabouts in New York are your friends? |
| B: Zài chéng lítǒu, Yībǎi-yíshí Jiē. | In the city, on 110th Street. |
| A: Nimen háizi yě dōu qù ma? | Are all your children going, too? |
| B: Zuì xiǎode buqù. Dàde dōu qù. | The littlest is not going. All of the older ones are going. |
| A: Nimen wèishénme buqǐng nimen péngyou dao zhèr lái? | Why don't you invite your friends to come here? |
| B: Tāmen hěn xǐhuan lái. Kěshi tāmen de shìqing tài duō, háizi yě tài xiǎo, suóyǐ xiànzài bùnéng lái. | They would like very much to come. But they have too much to do, and the children are too small, so they can't come now. |

VOCABULARY

suóyǐ	MA: therefore, so	jiē	N: street
chē	N: any wheeled vehicle	yídìng	A: certainly, definitely
qìchē	N: automobile, car	bùyídìng	A: not necessarily, uncertain
huǒchē	N: train	zěnmé	A: how?, in what way?
chuán	N: boat, ship	xíng	SV: be satisfactory, all right, 'can do'
fēiji	N: airplane (flying machine)		

cóng	CV: from	lái	V: come (here)
dào	CV: to (towards)	qù	V: go (there)
zuò	V: ride on (sit on) CV: go by	kàn	V: see, visit
yào	AV: going to, expect to, shall, will	zhànqilai	V: stand up
		zuòxia	V: sit down
Qǐng zuò!	IE: Please sit down!		

PATTERN SENTENCES

I. CO-VERBS OF MOTION AND DIRECTION (cóng and dào)

CV - PosN V

Pattern: Nǐ cóng nǎr lái? Wǒ cóng jiāli lái.

Where did you come from? I came from home.

Nǐ dào nǎr qù? Wǒ dào chéng lǐtōu qù.

Where are you going? I am going into the city.

1. Nǐ cóng shénme dìfang lái. Wǒ cóng pùzìli lái. Where did you come from? I came from the store.
2. Tā cóng nǎr lái? Tā cóng xuéxiào lái. Where did he come from? He came from school.
3. Nàxiē rén yě dōu cóng xuéxiào lái ma? Bù, tāmen cóng chéng wàitōu lái. Did all those people come from school, too? No, they came from outside the city.
4. Nǐ dào shénme dìfang qù? Wǒ dào xiāngxià qù. Where are you going? I'm going to the country.
5. Nǐ cóng jiāli qù ma? Bù, wǒ cóng pùzìli qù. Are you going from home? No, I'm going from the shop.
6. Nǐ búdao Niūyue qù ma? Bùqù. Aren't you going to New York? No, I'm not.
7. Wǒmen dōu xiǎng qù. Nǐ wèishénme bùqù? Wǒ tài máng, bùnéng qù. We're all thinking of going. Why aren't you going? I'm too busy, I can't go.

II. CO-VERB OF CONVEYANCE (zuò)

Pattern: Nǐ dào Zhōngguó qù, zěnmé qù? Nǐ zuò chuán qù ma? CV MeansN V

How are you going to China? Are you going by boat?

L. 11

1. Nǐ dào Yīngguó qù, zuò chuán ma?
Bù, wǒ xiǎng zuò fēijī. Are you going by boat to England?
No, I'm thinking of taking a plane.
2. Zuò fēijī buguì ma? Bùhěn guì. Isn't it expensive by plane? No,
not very expensive.
3. Zuò huǒchē qù xíng buxíng?
Buxíng, méiyǒu huǒchē. Can one go by train? No, it isn't
possible. There are no trains.
4. Wèishénme búzuò chuán? Zuo dà
chuán tài guì. Wǒ yě buxǐhuan Why don't you go by boat? It is
zuò xiǎo chuán. too expensive by a large boat, and
I don't enjoy small boats.

III. PURPOSE OF COMING OR GOING

Patterns: Nǐ dào zhèr lái zuò shénme? Wǒ dào zhèr lái niànshū.

What did you come here to do? I came here to study.

Nǐ dào Zhōngguó zuò shénme qù? Wǒ xiǎng jiāo yidiǎnr shū qù.

Nǐ dào Zhōngguó qù zuò shénme qù? Wǒ xiǎng qù jiāo
yidiǎnr shū qù.

What are you going to China to do? I want to do a little
teaching.

1. Nǐ dào jiēshàng qù mǎi shénme?
Wǒ yào mǎi yìge màozi. What are you going upstreet to buy?
I want to buy a hat.
2. Nǐmen dào zhège xuéxiào lái xué
shénme? Xué Zhōngguó huà. What do you come to this school to
learn? Spoken Chinese.
3. Qǐng nǐ dào wǒmen jiā lái zuòzuò. Please come to our home and pay us
a little visit.
4. Nǐ dào chéng lǐtōu qù kàn shéi?
Wǒ yào kàn nàwèi xǐng Lǐ de. Whom are going to see downtown? I
want to see the man named Li.
5. Nǐ dào nǎr qù niànshū? Wǒ yuànyì
dào Niūyue, kěshì wǒ fùmǔ Where are you going to study? I'd
buyuànyì wǒ zài Niūyue niànshū. like to go to New York, but my
parents don't want me to study in
New York.
6. Tā dào Rìběn zuò mǎimai qù ma?
Bù, tā jiāoshū qù. Is he going to Japan to carry on
business? No, he's going to teach.
7. Nǐ wèishénme búdao wàiguo qù
zuòshì qù? Méiqián! Why don't you go abroad to work?
No money!

CLASSROOM ACTIVITY

- A: requests a certain action
 B: says what he is going to do, just before he starts to do it
- A: Qǐng nǐ zhànqilai. Please stand up.
 B: Wǒ yào zhànqilai. I'm going to stand up.
- A: Qǐng nǐ dào wǒ zhèr lái. Please come here to me.
 B: Wǒ yào dào nǐ nàr qu. I'm going to you there.
- A: Wǒ yào nǐ dào wūzi hòutou qu. I want you to go to the rear.
 B: Wǒ yào dào wūzi hòutou qu. I'm going to the rear.
- A: Nǐ xiànzài zài nǎr? Where are you now?
 B: Wǒ zài wūzi hòutou ne. I'm at the back of the room.
- A: Nǐ xǐhuan hòutou ma? Do you like it at the back?
 B: Bùxǐhuan. No, I don't.
- A: Nǐ yuànyì dào qiántou lái ma? Do you wish to come to the front?
 B: Wǒ hěn yuànyì lái. I'd like very much to come.
- A: Hǎo, nǐ kěyì dào qiántou lái. All right, you may come to the front.
 B: Wǒ jiù yào dào qiántou lái. I'm just about to come to the front.
- A: Nǐ yuànyì zuòxià ma? Do you wish to sit down?
 B: Wǒ hěn yuànyì zuòxià. I'd like very much to sit down.
- A: Hǎo, nǐ kěyì zuòxià. Good, you may sit down!

FLUENCY DRILL

- Wǒ dào Zhōngguó qu.
 Wǒ yào dào Zhōngguó qu.
 Nǐ wèishénme yào dào Zhōngguó qu?
 Wǒ yào dào Zhōngguó qu zuòshì.
 Nǐ yào dào Zhōngguó qu zuò shénme shì?
 Wǒ yào dào Zhōngguó qu jiāoshū.
 Nǐ yào dào Zhōngguó qu jiāo shénme shū?
 Wǒ yào dào Zhōngguó qu jiāo Yǐngwén.
 Wǒ yào dào Zhōngguó qu jiāo yìdiǎnr Yǐngwén.
 Nǐ búyào dào Zhōngguó qu jiāo yìdiǎnr Yǐngwén ma?
 Hǎo, wǒ yě yào dào Zhōngguó qu jiāo yìdiǎnr Yǐngwén.
 Wǒmen dōu kěyì dào Zhōngguó qu jiāo yìdiǎnr Yǐngwén.
 Wǒmen dōu kěyì dào Zhōngguó qu jiāo yìdiǎnr Yǐngwén qu.

NOTES

1. MOTION AND DIRECTION WITH lái AND qù: The two verbs lái and qù express both motion and direction, lái (come) indicating motion toward the speaker, or his point of reference, and qù (go) motion toward a point other than the speaker.
2. CO-VERBS OF MOTION AND DIRECTION cóng AND dào: These two co-verbs, with appropriate positional objects, serve to indicate the particular origin and the specific objective of the action of the main verbs lái and qù which they precede. Cóng (from) indicates motion out from or away from some point, and dào (to) motion towards some point. When the negative is indicated, the negative particle precedes the entire expression:

cóng Zhōngguo lái	come from China
dào Měiguó qù	go to America
búdao nàr qù	not go (to) there
cóng xuéxiào qù	go from school

3. CO-VERBS zài, cóng, AND dào COMPARED: Zài signifies 'being at' a point in space or time, and may be represented by a dot. Cóng and dào on the other hand, involve motion. Dào shows 'motion to or toward' some point, and may be represented by an arrow. Cóng signifies 'motion starting from or leading out of' some point, and may be represented by an inverted arrow.
4. CO-VERB OF CONVEYANCE (zuò): The co-verb zuò (go by, lit. sit on) and its object indicate the means of conveyance adopted to get from one point to another:

zuò chuán lái	come by boat
búzuò fēijī qù	not go by plane

Note that since zuò literally means 'to sit', it is only used with respect to conveyances which provide places to sit down.

5. PURPOSE OF COMING OR GOING: The purpose of coming from or going to a place is indicated by placing the purpose expression either immediately before or immediately after the main verb lái or qù. Sometimes lái or qù appear both before and after the purpose expression:
- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| dào zhèr lái niànshū | come here to study |
| búdao Fàguó zuòshì | not go to France to work |
| dào jiēshang qù mǎi dōngxi qu | go downtown to make purchases |
6. PRONOUNS BEFORE POSITIONAL NOUNS: Expressions such as 'with us here', 'at his place', 'here to me', etc., are formed by placing pronouns before the positional words zhèr and nàr (compare Lesson 5, Note 2):

Qǐng nǐ dào wǒ zhèr lái.	Please come here to me.
Wǒ buyuànyì dào tā nàr qù.	I don't wish to go to his place.

DÌSHÍÈRKÈ - LESSON 12

COMPLETED ACTION WITH -LE

Report On The Trip To New York

- A: Nimen jintian zǎoshang dao nǎr qùle? Where did you go this morning?
- B: Dao Niūyue qùle. We went to New York.
- A: Dao chéng lǐtōu qùle meiyōu? Did you go into the city?
- B: Qùle. Wǒmen dao Yībǎi-yíshí Jiē, yige péngyou jiāli qùle. Yes, we went to a friend's home on 110th street.
- A: Péngyou zhīdao nimen yao lái ma? Did the friends know you were coming?
- B: Bùzhīdao. No, they didn't.
- A: Tāmen zai jiā buzai jiā? Were they at home?
- B: Xiānsheng zai jiā, kěshi tàitai dao jiēshang mǎi dōngxi qùle. The husband was home, but the wife had gone out to shop.
- A: Nimen zai tāmen jiāli chīfànle ma? Did you eat at their house?
- B: Méiyōu. Yīnwei tàitai búzaijiā, suǒyǐ wǒmen dao fānguǎnr qù chīfàn qùle. No, since the wife was not at home, we went to a restaurant to eat.
- A: Nimen méiqu kàn biéde péngyou ma? Didn't you go see any other friends?
- B: Méiyōu. No, we didn't.
- A: Nimen wǎnfàn chīle meiyōu? Have you had your supper?
- B: Hái méichī ne. Not yet.
- A: Zai wǒmen zhèr chī yidiǎnr dōngxi, hǎo buhǎo? How about having a bite to eat here with us?
- B: Xièxie, xièxie. Nimen tài kèqǐ! Thanks, you are being courteous!
- A: Méi shénme! Don't mention it!

VOCABULARY

zuótiān (MA)N: yesterday
jīntiān (MA)N: today
míngtiān(MA)N: tomorrow
zǎoshang(MA)N: morning

wǎnshang(MA)N: evening
zǎofàn N: breakfast (early meal)
zhōngfàn N: lunch (middle meal)

L. 12

wǎnfàn	N: supper, dinner (late meal)	zǒu	V: walk, go, leave
gùshi	N: story	huílai	V: come back, return here
biéde	N: (an)other (person or thing)	shuō gùshi	VO: tell a story
yǐjing	A: already	tīng gùshi	VO: listen to a story
hái	A: still, yet, again	-le	P: (verb and sentence suffix, indicating completion of action)
méi shénme!	IE: don't mention it! it's nothing at all!	méi(you)	P: (verb prefix, negating completion of action)
ne	P: (sentence suffix, indicating suspense in negative statements)		

PATTERN SENTENCES

I. VERBS OF MOTION AND DIRECTION WITH -LE

S Vle

Pattern: Tā lái le ma? Lái le.

Did he come or has he come? Yes, he came or has come.

Tāmen zǒu le meiyǒu? Méizǒu(ne).

Tāmen zǒu le meizǒu? Méizǒu(ne).

Have they left? No, they haven't (yet).

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Nǐde péngyou lái le meiyǒu? Tā yǐjing lái le. | Has your friend come? Yes, he's already come. |
| 2. Lǐ Xiānsheng zǒu le ma? Méizǒu ne. | Did Mr. Li leave? No, not yet. |
| 3. Tāmen zuótiān qù le meiyǒu? Méiqù. Tāmen jīntiān qù. | Did they go yesterday? No, they didn't. They go today. |
| 4. Nàge rén huí lái le ma? Hái méi ne. | Has that man returned? Not yet. |
| 5. Shéi lái le? Nǐde péngyou Zhāng Xiānsheng lái le. | Who came (or who's come)? Your friend, Mr. Zhang. |
| 6. Nǐ méiqù ma? Méiqù. | Didn't you go? No, I didn't. |
| 7. Nǐn xiānsheng hái méihuí lái ma? Hái méihuí lái ne. | Hasn't your husband returned yet. Not yet. |

8. Rén dōu zǒule ma?
Dōu zǒule.
Méidōu zǒu.
Dōu méizǒu.
Wǒ bùzhīdào tāmen zǒule méizǒu.
- Has everybody left?
Yes, everybody's gone.
No, not everybody.
Nobody has gone.
I don't know whether they have left or not.
9. Wáng Xiānsheng dao nǎr qule?
Tā dao fānguǎnr chīfàn qule.
- Where has Mr. Wang gone? He has gone to the restaurant to eat.
10. Tā dao Zhōngguo qù zuò shénme qule? Tā qù jiāoshū qule.
- What has he gone to China to do? He has gone to teach.

II. VERBS WITH SIMPLE OBJECTS AND -LE

S V(1e)O1e

Pattern: Nín chīfànle ma? Chīle, xièxie.

Have you eaten? Yes, thank you.

Nǐ wènle xiānsheng le méiyǒu? Wǒ wènle tā le. Tā shuō kényi.

Did you ask the teacher? Yes, I did ask him and he said all right.

1. Nimen chīle zǎofàn le meiyǒu?
Wǒmen yǐjīng chīle.
- Have you had breakfast? We have already eaten.
2. Nǐ kànle jīntiānde bào le ma?
Hái méikàn ne.
- Have you read today's paper? Not yet.
3. Tā gěi nǐ nage qián le ma?
Méiyǒu.
- Has he given you the money? No, he hasn't.
4. Nǐ qǐng tāmen le meiyǒu? Qǐngle.
- Have you invited them? Yes, I have.
5. Nǐ méiquàn ta ma? Wǒ qù kàn ta le.
- Didn't you go to see him? I did go to see him.
6. Dōngxi dōu mǎile ma?
Méidōu mǎi ne.
Dōu méimǎi ne.
- Has everything been bought?
Not everything yet.
Nothing yet.
7. Nǐde qìchē mǎile meiyǒu? Méi ne. Méi rén yào!
- Have you sold your car? Not yet.
Nobody wants it!

III. STRESSING PLACE, CONVEYANCE, AND PURPOSE WITH shi...de

Patterns: (1-2) Wǒde Zhōngguó huà shì zài Měiguó xuéde.

My Chinese was learned in America.

(3-4) Tā shì cóng Fǎguó lái de, búshì ma? Shì.

He came from France, didn't he? Yes.

(5-6) Tā shì zuò chuán lái de. Tā méizuo fēijī.

He came by boat. He didn't come by plane.

(7-8) Tā shì niǎnshū lái de (or lái niǎnshūde).

He came to study.

1. Nín de Yīngwén shuō de zhēn hǎo!
Zài nǎr xué de?

You speak English wonderfully!
Where did you learn it?

2. Nǐ nǎge bǐ shì zài nǎge pùzìli
mǎi de? Shì zài chénglǐ nǎge
zuì dà de pùzìli mǎi de.

At which store did you buy that pen
of yours? At the largest store in
the city.

3. Zhèwei xiǎojiě shì cóng Déguó
lái de.

This lady came from Germany.

4. Wǒmen dōu shì cóng wǒmen jiāli
qù de, kěshì Lǐ Xiānshēng shì
cóng xuéxiào qù de.

We all went from our homes, but
Mr. Li went from the school.

5. Nǐn shì búshì zuò chuán lái de?
Búshì, wǒ shì zuò qìchē lái de.

Did you come by boat? No, I came
by car.

6. Tā shì zěnmē qù de? Tā shì zuò
péngyou de qìchē qù de.

How did he go? He went in a
friend's car.

7. Tā shì wèishénmē lái de? Tā shì
kàn yige péngyou lái de.

Why was it that he came? He came
to see a friend.

8. Tā dào nǎr qù shì zuò shénmē
qù de? Shì zuò mǎimài qù de.

What did he go there to do? He
went to carry on business.

CLASSROOM ACTIVITY

A: asks B to do something

B: does it and then reports what he has done

C: the class says what they just saw him do

A: Qǐng nǐ zhànqilai.

Please stand up.

B: Wǒ zhànqilaile

I have stood up.

C: Tā zhànqilaile.

He has stood up.

A: Qǐng nǐ dao zhèr lái.	Please come here
B: Wǒ dao zhèr lái.	I have come here.
C: Tā dao nàr qù.	He has gone there.
A: Qǐng nǐ dao hòutou qù.	Please go to the rear.
B: Wǒ dao hòutou lái.	I have come to the rear.
C: Tā dao hòutou qù.	He has gone to the rear.
A: Qǐng nǐ dao qiántou lái.	Please come to the front.
B: Wǒ dao qiántou lái.	I have come to the front.
C: Tā dao qiántou qù.	He has gone to the front.
A: Nǐ kěyǐ zuòxià.	You may sit down.
B: Wǒ zuòxià.	I have sat down.
C: Tā zuòxià.	He has sat down.

FLUENCY DRILL

Chīfàn.
 Méichīfàn.
 Wǒ méichīfàn.
 Wǒmen méichīfàn.
 Wǒmen méi zài tā nàr chīfàn.
 Suǒyǐ wǒmen méi zài tā nàr chīfàn.
 Tā dao jiěshàng qù, suǒyǐ wǒmen méi zài tā nàr chīfàn.
 Tāmen dao jiěshàng qù, suǒyǐ wǒmen méi zài tāmen nàr chīfàn.
 Tāmen dōu dao jiěshàng qù, suǒyǐ wǒmen méi zài tāmen nàr chīfàn.
 Tāmen dōu dao jiěshàng qù, suǒyǐ wǒmen méi zài tāmen nàr chī Zhōngfàn.

NOTES

1. COMPLETED ACTION WITH -LE: The particle -le, either as a suffix to verbs, or as a sentence final, indicates the completion of the action of the verb, or of the entire predicate:

Zhāng Xiānshēng lái.	Mr. Zhang came (or has come).
Wǒ yǐjīng qǐng tāmen le.	I have already invited them.
Tā gěi wǒ qián le.	He gave (or has given) me money.

In the case of verbs with simple objects, in addition to the -le at the end of the sentence, one often finds another -le attached to the main verb:

Nǐ chīle fàn le ma?	Have you eaten?
Wǒ gěile ta nàge biǎo le.	I've given him that watch (already).

2. NEGATION OF COMPLETED ACTION WITH méi-: The negative particle méi- (or méiyou-), when prefixed to verbs, negates all idea of completion of the action of that verb, or of the entire predicate:

Tā méilái (or méiyou lái).	He didn't (or hasn't) come.
Wǒmen dōu méiqù.	None of us went.
Wǒ méikàn bào.	I didn't (or haven't) read the paper.

3. SUSPENSE WITH ne: It was shown in Lesson 10 (see Note 6) that the sentence suffix ne in positive statements (in contrast to -le) carries forward the action of the verb. In the case of negated statements with méi-, the addition of ne suggests the idea of suspense, or a holding over of the action, with the probability of an early completion:

Tā méilái ne.	He hasn't come yet.
Biǎo hái méimǎi ne.	I still haven't bought the watch yet.
Tā méigěi wǒ nage qián ne.	He hasn't given me the money yet.

4. QUESTIONS AND COMPLETED ACTION: Note the following forms of questions as to action already completed:

Tā lái le ma?	Did or has he come?
Tā lái le méilai?	Did or has he come?
Tā lái le meiyou?	Did or has he come?
Tā méilái ma?	Didn't or hasn't he come?

Where simple objects are involved, the following forms are most commonly used:

Nín chí(le) fàn le ma?	Did you eat or have you eaten?
Nín chí(le) fàn le meiyou?	Did you eat or have you eaten?
Nín méichífàn ma?	Didn't you eat or haven't you eaten?

With transposed objects, -le is attached to the verb only:

Jīntiānde bào, nín kànle ma?	Have you read today's paper?
Jīntiānde bào, nín kànle meikan?	Have you read today's paper?
Jīntiānde bào, nín kànle meiyou?	Have you read today's paper?
Jīntiānde bào, nín méikàn ma?	Haven't you read today's paper?

5. PURPOSE AND COMPLETED ACTION: In the last lesson (see Note 5), three variant forms of the same pattern for expressing the purpose of coming or going were shown. When completed action is indicated, -le is preferably attached to either of the two forms ending in lái or qù, and to the end of the sentence only:

Tā dao Zhōngguo jiāoshū qùle. He has gone to China to teach.

Tā dao chéng wàitou qù kàn péngyou qùle. He has gone outside the city to see a friend.

6. STRESSING PLACE, CONVEYANCE, AND PURPOSE: Circumstances connected with the action of the main verb, such as the place where the action occurred (with zài), or started from (with cóng), or what conveyance was used (with zuò), or the purpose of coming or going, are all singled out for special stress in the same way that the person who instigated the action was stressed in Lesson 9 (see Note 4), with the shì...de clausal construction:

Nín de màozi (shì) zài nǎr mǎide? Where did you buy your hat?

Tā (shì) cóng nǎr láiide? Where did he come from?

Nǐ (shì) zuò huǒchē huílaide ma? Did you come back by train?

Wǒ (shì) dao zhèr lái niànshū de (or niànshū láiide). I came here to study.

Note that the shì in this construction is often omitted and understood.

DÌSHÍSĀNKÈ - LESSON 13

TIME WHEN EXPRESSIONS-PROBABILITY WITH BA

How Many Months In A Year?

- A: Yìnián yǒu jǐge yuè? How many months are there in a year?
B: Yìnián yǒu shíèrge yuè. There are 12 months in a year.
- A: Yǒu duōshāotian? How many days?
B: Sānbǎi-liùshí-wūtiān. 365 days.
- A: Yíge yuè yǒu duōshāotian? How many days in a month?
B: Yǒude yǒu sānshítian, yǒude yǒu sānshí-yítian. Some have 30 days, some have 31 days.
- A: Èryuè méiyǒu sānshítian ba? February doesn't have 30 days, does it?
B: Méiyǒu. Èryuè jiù yǒu èrshí-bātiān. No, it doesn't. February has only 28 days.
- A: Dìyíge yuè, Zhōngguó huà jiào shénme? What is the first month called in Chinese?
B: Jiào Yíyue. It is called First Month.
- A: Dìèrge yuè jiù jiào Èryuè ba? The second month is just called Second Month, isn't it?
B: Duìle! You're right!
- A: Ou, nà bunán! Yíge yuè yǒu jǐge líbài? Oh, that's not difficult! How many weeks in a month?
B: Sìge líbài. Yìnián yǒu wǔshí-èrge líbài, yíge líbài yǒu qītiān. Four weeks. A year has 52 weeks, a week has 7 days.
- A: 'Sunday' Zhōngguó huà jiào shénme? What is Sunday called in Chinese?
B: 'Sunday' jiào Lìbàitiān, 'Monday' jiào Lìbàiyī. Sunday is called 'Lìbàitiān', Monday 'Lìbàiyī'.
- A: Nà yě bunán! That's not difficult either!
B: Suǒyǐ wǒ shuō: Zhōngguó huà hěn róngyì xué! Hence I say that Chinese is very easy to learn!

VOCABULARY

yǒu(de)shíhou	MA: sometimes	huǒchēzhàn	N: railroad station
qùnián	(MA)N: last year	qìchēzhàn	N: bus station or stop
jīnnián	(MA)N: this year	tiāntiān	A: everyday
míngnián	(MA)N: next year	niánnián	A: year by year
nà	SP: that (in general)	yào jǐn	SV: be important
(dì)jǐ-	SP: which? (of series)	dǎo	V: arrive at, reach
-tiān	M: day	xīwang	V: hope that, hope for, expect that
-nián	M: year	dì-	P: ordinalizing prefix to numbers
-hào	M: day (of month); number (of house, room, etc.)	ba	P: (sentence suffix, implying probability)
yuè	N: month	(nà) bú-yào jǐn!	IE: that's nothing! never mind!
1ībài	N: week	duìle!	IE: that's right! (indicates agreement)
shíhou	N: time		
xīwang	N: hope, expectation		
chēzhàn	N: station		

The Year		The Month		The Day	
Yìqiān-jiǔbǎinián	1900	Yíyue ¹	January	yíhao	first
Yìqiān bābǎi-liùshisānnián	1863	Èryue	February	èrhao	second
Yìqiān jiǔbǎi-sìshiqīnián	1947	Sānyue	March	sānhao	third
(telephone style)		Sìyue	April	sìhao	fourth
Yī-sì-jiǔ-èr-nián	1492	Wǔyue	May	wǔhao	fifth
Yī-líng-sān-yī-nián	1031	Liùyue	June	liùhao	sixth
Yī-bā-líng-líng-nián	1800	Qíyue	July	qíhao	seventh
Yī-bā-yī-líng-nián	1810	Báiyue	August	báhao	eighth
shénme nián	what year?	Jiǔyue	September	jiǔhao	ninth
qùnián	last year	Shíyue	October	shíhao	tenth
míngnián	next year	Shíyíyue	November	shíyí(hao)	eleventh
nǎnián	which year?	Shíèryue	December	etc.	
		jīyue	which month?	jīhao	which day?
		shàngyue ²	(of the 12)		(of the 31)
		zhèyue	last month	zuótiān	yesterday
		xiàyue	this month	jīntian	today
		nǎyue	next month	míngtiān	tomorrow
			which month?	nǎtiān	which day?

L. 13

		The Week	
shànglībài ²	last week	Lībaitiān	Sunday
zhèlībài	this week	Lībaiyī	Monday
xiàlībài	next week	Lībaièr	Tuesday
nǎlībài	which week?	Lībaisān	Wednesday
shànglībaisān	last week Wednesday	Lībaisì	Thursday
zhèlībaisān	this week Wednesday	Lībaiwǔ	Friday
xiàlībaisān	next week Wednesday	Lībailiù	Saturday
nǎlībaisān	which Wednesday?	Lībaijī	which day? (of the week)

¹Distinguish between Yíyue (January) and yíge yue (one month).

²The measure -ge may be inserted in these two columns, as for example:

shànggeyuè, nǎge yuè?, shànggelībài, nǎge lībài?, etc.

Ordinal Numbers

diyitiān	the 1st day
dièrtiān	the 2nd day, next day
disānnián	the 3rd year
disìge	the 4th one (person or thing)
diwǔwèi	the 5th person (polite for teachers, etc.)
diliùběn	the 6th volume
dīqīzhāng	the 7th sheet (paper)
dijīběn	which volume? (of a series)

PATTERN SENTENCES

I. TIME WHEN EXPRESSIONS (PRECEDE VERB)

Time When CV - N V

Pattern: Nǐ shénme shíhòu dào Zhōngguó qù? Wǒ míngnián qù.
When are you going to China? I'm going next year.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Nǐ zuótiān wǎnshàng qùle ma?
Méiqù. | Did you go last evening? No, I didn't. |
| 2. Zhāng Xiānsheng míngtiān lái bulái? Míngtiān bulái. | Is Mr. Zhang coming tomorrow? No, he's not. |
| 3. Tā lībàièr huílaile meiyòu?
Huílaile. | Did he return Tuesday? Yes, he did. |
| 4. Shànglībài nǐ zài nǎr? Shànglībài wǒ zài Niūyue. | Where were you last week? Last week I was in New York. |
| 5. Nǐ xiàyuè búdao Yīngguó qù ma? Buqù. Nǐ zěnme zhīdao wǒ buqù. | Aren't you going to England next month? No. How did you know I wasn't going? |

L. 13

3. Nimen bùmài wàiguo chá ba? Mài. You don't sell foreign tea, do you?
NI mǎi duōshao? Yes, we do. How much do you want?
4. Xuésheng dōu huíjiāle ba? Duile, I suppose the students have all
dōu huíjiāle. returned home? You're right,
they've all gone home.
5. NI jīntiān buqù ba? Buqù. You're not going today, I suppose?
No, I'm not.
6. NI tiāntiān dào tā nǎr qù ba? I suppose you go to his place every
Wǒ yǒushíhou qù, yǒushíhou day? Sometimes I go there,
búqù. sometimes I don't.

FLUENCY DRILLS

Nín shì nǎnián dào zhèr lái de?

Wǒ shì Yī-jiǔ-sì-líng-nián lái de.

Nín shì nǎyue dào de?

Wǒ shì Èryue dào de.

Nín shì Èryue jīhao dào de?

Wǒ shì Èryue bāhao dào de.

Nín shì bāhao zǎoshang dào de ma?

Wǒ búshì zǎoshang dào de, wǒ shì wǎnshang dào de.

Nín de biǎo shì nǎnián mǎi de?

Wǒ de biǎo shì qùnián mǎi de.

Nín de biǎo shì qùnián nǎyue mǎi de?

Wǒ de biǎo shì qùnián Qīyue mǎi de.

Nín de biǎo shì Qīyue jīhao mǎi de?

Wǒ de biǎo shì Qīyue sānhao mǎi de.

Qùnián Qīyue sānhao shì lǐbǎi jǐ?

Qùnián Qīyue sānhao shì lǐbǎi wǔ.

NOTES

1. TIME WHEN AND WITHIN WHICH: In indicating the time when or within an action occurred, or failed to occur, whether it be a point of time or a stated period, the time element always comes somewhere before the main verb of the sentence or clause. The entire expression thus functions as a movable adverb, and serves as a setting for the action:

Wǒ míngtiān qù.	I am going tomorrow.
Tā shì zuótiān láiide.	He came yesterday.
Wǒ zhè liǎngtiān méi shì.	I have nothing to do these two days.
Jīntiān wǎnshàng qǐng nǐmen dào wǒmen jiā lái chí yídiǎnr Zhōngguó fàn.	Please come to our home this evening for a little Chinese food.

2. STRESSING TIME WHEN: When it is desired to emphasize the time when or within which an action did or did not take place, rather than the action itself, the shì...de construction is used, as in the case of place, purpose, etc. (see Lesson 9, Note 4, and Lesson 12, Note 6). Contrast the following pairs of sentences:

Wǒ péngyou zuótiān láiile.	My friend came yesterday.
Tā shì zuótiān láiide.	It was yesterday that he came.
Wǒ jīntiān mǎile shū le.	I bought a book today.
Zhèběn búshì jīntiān mǎide.	This volume is not one I bought today.

3. PROBABILITY WITH SENTENCE SUFFIX BA: The particle ba suffixed to certain statements makes them imply a probability, a conclusion based on the best light one has, yet leaving some room for doubt. Contrast the following pairs of sentences:

Nín hěn máng ma?	Are you very busy?
Nín hěn máng ba?	You're probably very busy, aren't you?
Tā dào Zhōngguó qule ma?	Has he gone to China?
Tā dào Zhōngguó qule ba?	He's gone to China, I presume?
Tā méiqù ma?	Didn't he go?
Tā méiqù ba?	I don't suppose he went, did he?

4. ORDINAL NUMBERS are formed by prefixing the ordinalizing particle dì- to the cardinal numbers. Compare the English endings -st, -nd, -rd, etc.:

dìyī (first), dìèr (second), etc.
dìyige (the first), disānběn (the third volume), etc.

5. INQUIRING DAY OF THE WEEK, ETC.: In inquiring and giving the day of the week, etc., the verb shì is very often omitted, as in the case of asking prices (see Lesson 6, Note 6):

Míngtiān (shì) Lǐbaijǐ?	What day of the week is tomorrow?
Lǐbailiù.	Saturday.

Jīntiān (shì) jīhào?
Jīntiān (shì) shìsānhào.

What day of the month is today?
Today is the 13th.

Jīnnián (shì) shénme nián?
Jīnnián (shì) Yī-jiǔ-sì-
qīnián.

What year is this?
This year is 1947.

6. DATES AND ADDRESSES: When giving dates and addresses, or other detailed times and places, the larger units always precede the smaller. No -de is used between the different divisions:

Lǐbàièr wǎnshàng.

Tuesday evening.

disāntiān zǎoshàng

the morning of the 3rd day

Yī-jiǔ-sì-wǔnián Báyue shìsì

August 14th, 1945

Zhōngguó Nánjīng

Nanjing, China

Niǔyuē Wǔshíjiǔ Jiē

59th Street, New York City

Shìsì Jiē sānbǎihào

#300 14th Street

Note that the particle dì- is omitted in inquiring and giving the month, day of month, or number of the street.

DÌSHÍSIKÈ - LESSON 14

CO-VERBS OF INTEREST, ETC. - INDEFINITES

Who Will Go With Me To Eat?

- A: Jīntiān wǎnshàng wǒ xiǎng dào
jiěshàng qu chí diǎnr Zhōngguó
fàn. Shéi gēn wǒ qù?
I'm thinking of going out for some
Chinese food tonight. Who'll go
with me?
- B: Wǒ gēn nǐ qù.
I'll go with you.
- A: Nǐ huì yòng kuàizi ma?
Do you know how to use chopsticks?
- B: Yìdiǎnr dōu bùhuì.
I don't know the first thing about
it.
- A: Nà buyào jīn! Nǐ yào yòng dāozi
chāzi, fànguǎnr li dōu yǒu. Nǐ
yào xué yòng kuàizi, wǒ kěyǐ
jiāo nǐ.
Never mind! If you want to use a
knife and fork, the restaurant has
both. If you want to learn to use
chopsticks, I can teach you.
- B: Wǒmen dào nǎge fànguǎnr?
To which restaurant shall we go?
- A: Chéng lǐtōu yǒu yíge xiǎo
fànguǎnr jiào Xīn Huá Lóu. Wǒ
tīngshuō nàrde cài búcuò.
There is a small restaurant down-
town called the New China. I
hear that the food there is quite
good.
- B: Ou, wǒ zhīdao nǎge dìfang.
Oh, I know that place.

(At The Restaurant)

- A: Nǐ zuì ài chí shénme?
What do you like most to eat?
- B: Wǒ shénme dōu ài chí.
I like to eat anything.
- A: Nǐ xiǎng chí yú ma?
Would you like some fish?
- B: Hěn xiǎng chí.
I'd love to have some.
- A: Hǎo, sānge cài, yíge tāng, gòu
bugòu?
Good, would three main dishes and
a soup be enough?
- B: Gòule!
That'll be enough!
- A: Wǒmen xiān hē yìdiǎnr jiǔ, hǎo
buhǎo?
How about starting off with a little
wine?
- B: Xièxie, wǒ bùhē jiǔ.
Thanks, I don't drink wine.

VOCABULARY

-wǎn	M: bowl (of)	yikuàir	A: together (also as N)
-jù	M: (measure for huà)	gēn	CV: with; and (following)
cài	N: vegetables; dish of Chinese food	gěi	CV: for; to (for benefit of)
ròu	N: meat	tì	CV: for (in place of)
yú	N: fish	yòng	V: use, employ CV: with (using)
tāng	N: soup	duì	CV: to, towards (facing)
dāozi	N: knife	yǒuyòng	SV: be useful
chāzi	N: fork	bucuò	SV: be not bad, quite good
sháor	N: spoon	wánr	V: play
kuàizi	N: chopsticks	tīngshuō	IE: hear(d) it said that
wǎn	N: bowl	wèn...hǎo	IE: inquire after another's welfare
xìn	N: letter, mail	gòule!	IE: that'll be enough!
jùzi	N: sentence		
gōngfu	N: free time, leisure time		
xiān	A: first		

PATTERN SENTENCESI. CO-VERBS OF INTEREST, ETC.(a) The Co-Verb gēn (with; and, lit. following)

Pattern: Wǒmen míngtiān yào gēn Lǐ Xiānsheng Lǐ Tàitai yikuàir chí wǎnfàn.

We are eating supper with Mr. and Mrs. Li tomorrow.

Zhāng Xiānsheng gēn Zhāng Tàitai dào Běijīng qùle.

Wǒ zuì xǐhuan gēn xiǎo háizi wánr.

Tāmen bugēn wǒmen yikuàir qù.

Wǒ méigēn tā shuō shénme(huà).

Wǒ méi gōngfu gēn tāmen qù.

Nǐde Zhōngguo huà shì gēn shéi xuéde?

(b) The Co-Verb gěi (for; to, lit. for the benefit of)

Pattern: Lǐ Tàitai yào gěi wǒmen zuò Zhōngguó fàn.

Mrs. Li is going to cook Chinese food for us.

Wǒ tàitai tiāntiān gěi wǒmen zuòfàn.

Nǐ néng bunéng xiān gěi wǒ mǎi yidiǎnr dōngxī?

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒmen shuō yidiǎnr Yīngwén.

Wǒ méigěi tā zuò shénme (shì).

Wáng Xiānsheng gěi tāmen xiěle jǐge Zhōngguó zì le.

Wǒ tīngshuō tā cháng(cháng) gěi tā fùmǔ xiěxìn.

(c) The Co-Verb tì (for, lit. substituting for)

Pattern: Lǐ Xiānsheng yào tì Lǐ Tàitai mǎi cài.

Mr. Li is buying the meat and vegetables for Mrs. Li.

Nǐ néng tì wǒ zuò zhège(shì) ma?

Qǐng nǐ tì wǒ gēn Chén Xiānsheng shuōshuō.

Wǒ zuótian méitì wǒ mǔqīn mǎi shénme.

Chén Xiānsheng zuótian tì Liú Xiānsheng jiāoshūle.

(d) The Co-Verb yòng (with, lit. using)

Zhōngguó rén yòng dāozǐ chāzi chīfàn ma?

Qǐng nǐ yòng Zhōngguó huà shuō. Wǒ budǒng Yīngwén.

Shéi buyòng sháor hē tāng?

Wǒ yòng tā gěi wǒde qián mǎile liǎngzhāng huà.

(e) The Co-Verb duì (to, towards, lit. facing)

Pattern: Lǐ Xiānsheng Lǐ Tàitai duì wǒmen hěn hǎo.

Mr. and Mrs. Li are very nice to us.

Tā duì wǒ shuō...

Wǒ méidui tāmen shuō shénme(huà).

Wǒ yǐjīng duì wǒ tàitai shuōle.

Wǒ duì zhègè shì shénme dōu bùzhīdào.

II. QUESTION WORDS AS INDEFINITES

Pattern: Nǐ yào shénme? Wǒ búyào shénme.

What do you want? I don't want anything.

1. Nǐ yǒu shénme shì? Wǒ méi shénme shì. What can I do for you? You can't do anything for me.
2. Nǐ dào nǎr qù? Wǒ búdao nǎr qù. Where are you going? I'm not going anywhere.
3. Nǐ gēn shéi shuōhuà? Wǒ méigēn shéi shuōhuà. With whom did you speak? I didn't speak with anyone.
4. Nǐmen xuéxiào yǒu duōshao xuésheng? Méi duōshao. How many students are there in your school? Not many.
5. Nǐmen yǒu jǐgè xīn xuésheng? Méi jǐgè. How many new students do you have? Not many.

III. INCLUSIVENESS AND EXCLUSIVENESS (WITH INDEFINITES)

Pattern: Nǐ yào shénme? Wǒ shénme dōu yào, or Wǒ shénme dōu (or yě) búyào.

What do you want? Anything at all, or Nothing at all.

1. Shéi zhīdao zhègè shìqing? Shéi dōu zhīdao. Shéi dōu bùzhīdào. Who knows about this? Everybody knows. Nobody knows.
2. Nǎr yǒu fànguǎnr? Nǎr dōu yǒu. Nǎr yě méiyǒu. Where are there restaurants? Everywhere. Nowhere.
3. Nǎgè qìchē shì nǐde? Nǎgè dōu búshì wǒde. Wǒde mǎile. Which car is yours? Neither (or none) of them is mine. Mine is sold.
4. Nǐ yào kàn nǎběn shū? Nǎběn dōu kényi. Which volume do you want to look at (or read)? Either (or any) one will be all right.
5. Nǐ shuō nǎtiān zǒu hǎo? Nǎtiān dōu xíng. Which day do you say is the best to leave? Any day will do.

IV. EXCLUSIVENESS INTENSIFIED ('not even')

Pattern: Nǐ yào duōshao? Wǒ yidiǎnr dōu (or yě) buyào.

How much do you want? Not any (lit. not even a bit).

Nǐ yào jǐge (or duōshao)? Wǒ yíge dōu (or yě) buyào.

How many do you want? Not a single one.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Nǐ huì xiě duōshao zì? Wǒ yíge zì yě búhuì xiě. | How many characters can you write?
Not a single character. |
| 2. Nǐ kànle jǐběn shū le? Wǒ yīběn dōu méikàn ne. | How many books have you read? I haven't read a single volume yet. |
| 3. Nín huì shuō Yīngwén ma? Wǒ yidiǎnr dōu búhuì shuō. | Can you speak English? I can't speak a bit of English. |
| 4. Nǐ yǒu duōshao qián? Yímáo qián yě méiyǒu. | How much money do you have? Not even a dime. |
| 5. Nǐ néng chī jǐwǎn fàn? Bànwǎn dōu bunéng chī. | How many bowls of rice can you eat? Not even half a bowl. |
| 6. Wǒ shuōde huà, nín dǒng duōshao? Yìjù wǒ dōu budǒng. | How much do you understand of what I said? Not a single sentence. |
| 7. Nǐ yào shénme? Wǒ yidiǎnr shénme yě buyào. | What do you want? I don't want anything at all. |

FLUENCY DRILL

Mǎi cài.

Mǎi cài qu.

Qù mǎi cài qu.

Gēn wǒ qù mǎi cài qu.

Nǐ gēn wǒ qù mǎi cài qu.

Nǐ gēn wǒ yikuàir qù mǎi cài qu.

Nǐ gēn wǒ yikuàir dao chénglǐtōu qù mǎi cài qu.

Nǐ gēn wǒ yikuàir dao chénglǐtōu qù mǎi cài qu.

Nǐ yǒu gōngfu gēn wǒ yikuàir dao chénglǐtōu qù mǎi cài qu ma?

Nǐ míngtiān yǒu gōngfu gēn wǒ yikuàir dao chénglǐtōu qù mǎi cài qu ma?

NOTES

1. CO-VERBS OF INTEREST, ETC.: In this lesson five more co-verbs are introduced: gēn (with), gěi (for or to), tì (for), yòng (with), and duì (to). The sentence pattern is the same as that introduced in Lesson 10:

Nǐ gēn shéi qù?	With whom are you going?
Tā tiāntiān gěi wǒ mǎi bào.	He buys the paper for me every day.
Wǒ kéyǐ tì nǐ qù ma?	May I go for you?
Shéi yòng dāozǐ hē tāng?	Who drinks soup with a knife?
Wǒ duì tāmen shuō wǒ bùnéng qù.	I told them I couldn't go.

2. QUESTION WORDS AS INDEFINITES: Question words like shéi (who?), shénme (what?), etc., are commonly used as indefinites like the English 'anyone', and 'anything':

Nàge wǎnli yǒu shénme? Méi shénme.	What's in that bowl? Nothing.
Chēshàng yǒu duōshǎo rén? Méi duōshǎo rén.	How many people are there on the train. Not many.

3. INCLUSIVENESS AND EXCLUSIVENESS: To express inclusive ideas such as 'everyone' and 'everything', and exclusive ideas such as 'no one' and 'nothing', indefinites plus dōu (at all) are used:

Shéi xǐhuan tā? Shéi dōu xǐhuan tā.	Who likes him? Everybody likes him.
Shénme rén yào zhège? Shénme rén dōu (or yě) buyào.	What person wants this. Nobody wants it.

4. INTENSIFYING EXCLUSIVENESS: To express an intense degree of exclusiveness, as in the English phrase 'not even a little', yì and a measure, or some expression which signifies a very small number or amount, is used before dōu and the negative for of the verb:

Nǐ huì zuǒfàn ma? Wǒ yìdiǎnr dōu bùhuì.	Do you know how to cook? I don't know a single thing about it.
Háizi chīle jīwǎn fàn le? Bànwǎn dōu méichī ne.	How many bowls of rice has the child eaten? Not even half a bowl yet.

Note that the adverb yě is often substituted for dōu in sentences expressing exclusiveness.

DÌSHÍWŪKÈ - LESSON 15

SINGLE AND DOUBLE -LE - TIME SPENT

A Trip To Italy

Wǒ yǒu yige péngyou, xīng Sī. Yǒu yitiān Sī Xiānsheng dao Yìguo qule.	I have a friend named Smith. One day Mr. Smith went to Italy.
Tā búshi yige rén qùde, tā shì gēn liǎngge péngyou yikuàir qùde.	He didn't go alone, he went with a couple of friends.
Tāmen zuò chuán, zuòle wūtiān jiu dào le Fàguo. Dào le Fàguo, xiàle chuán, tāmen jiu shàngle huǒchē le.	They traveled by boat for five days and reached France. Upon arriving in France, they disembarked and boarded a train.
Tāmende huǒchē shì Lǐbaisān kāide, dièrtian zǎoshang jiu dào le Luómǎ le.	Their train left on Wednesday, and the next morning they arrived in Rome.
Dào le Luómǎ, tāmen jiu zài chéng lǐtōu zhǎo le yige lǚguǎn.	When they got to Rome they hunted up a hotel in town.
Tāmen zài nàge lǚguǎn li zhù le yígeduō lǐbài, hòulái jiu dào yige péngyou jiā qù zhù qule.	They lived in that hotel a week or so, and afterwards went to live at a friend's home.
Sī Xiānsheng gēn tāde péngyou zài nàge rénde jiā li zhù le bànnián, jiu huí Měiguó le.	Mr. Smith and his two friends stayed in that man's home for half a year, and then returned to America.
Míngnián wǒ yě děi dao Yìguo qu kànkàn. Yǒu rén shuō búbi qù. Hái yǒu rén shuō bié qù. Kěshi wǒ shuō wǒmen dōu yīngdāng dao Yìguo qu kànkàn.	Next year I must also go to Italy to have a look around. Some say there is no need to go. Others say don't go. But I say we all ought to visit Italy.

VOCABULARY

hòulái	MA: afterwards, and then	lǚguǎn	N: hotel
bàntiān (MA)	N: a long while	jiù	A: then (introduces subsequent action)
yitiān (MA)	N: a day, a whole day	děi	AV: have to, must
hǎojiǐ-	NU: quite a few	búbì	AV: need not
hǎoxiē	NU: a good many, a good deal of	buyòng	AV: no use to
-kuài	M: piece (lit. lump)	yīngdāng	AV: ought to, should
-kè	M: lesson	bié	AV: don't (imperative, from búyào)
-fēng	M: (measure for letters)		

L. 15

shàng	V: ascend, go up on, go to	shàngxué	VO: go to school
xià	V: descend, go down from	shàngkè	VO: go to class
zhù	V: live or stay in or at	shàngchē	VO: board a train or car
huí	V: return (to)	shàngjiē	VO: go to the shopping district
zhǎo	V: look or hunt for	shànglóu	VO: come or go upstairs
kāi	V: open, start away (train, bus, ship), operate (car)	huíjiā	VO: return home
		huíguó	VO: return to one's native country

PATTERN SENTENCES

I. SINGLE VERB -le WITH SIMPLE OBJECTS (DEPENDENT CLAUSES)

V1e O, jiu...

Pattern: Wǒmen chīle fàn, jiu shànglóule.

When we had eaten, we went upstairs.

1. Wǒmen shàngle lóu, jiu zuòxiále. When we got upstairs, we sat down.
2. Tā mǎile táng, jiu huíjiāle. He returned home after he bought the candy.
3. Tāmen xiàle chē, jiu shàng lǚguǎn qūle. After they got off the train, they went to the hotel.
4. Wǒmen dào le chēzhàn, huǒchē yǐjīng kāile. When we reached the station, the train had already left.
5. Wǒ dào le Niǚyue, jiu yào qù zhǎo wǒde péngyou. I'm going to look up my friends as soon as I get to New York.
6. Tāmen dào le Tiānjīng, jiu méixiàchuán. When they arrived at Tianjing they didn't disembark.
7. Nín chīle fàn, kànle bào, jiu qǐng nín shànglóu. After you have eaten and read the paper, please come upstairs.

II. SINGLE OR DOUBLE -le WITH MEASURED OBJECTS

V1e Meas O (1e)

Patterns: (a) Nàge hái zi (zuótiān) chīle bākuai táng.

That child ate eight pieces of candy (yesterday).

(b) Nàge hái'zi (yǐjīng) chīle bákuaī táng 1e.

That child has (already) eaten eight pieces of candy.

1. (a) Wǒ shàngyue kànle sānběn shū. I read three books last month.
 (b) Xiānsheng yào wǒmen kàn wǔběn shū. Wǒ kànle sānběn 1e. The teacher wants us to read five books. I have read three already.
2. (a) Wǒ wènle liǎngge rén. Tāmen dōu shuō bùzhīdào. I inquired of two people. They both said they didn't know.
 (b) Wǒ wènle liǎngge rén 1e. Wǒ hái děi wèn jǐge rén. I have asked two people already. I must still inquire of a few more.
3. (a) Tāmen qùnián zài wàiguo yìgòng dào le bāge dìfang. Last year while abroad they went to eight places.
 (b) Tāmen jīnnián yǐjīng dào le sānge dìfang 1e. This year they have already been to three places.
4. (a) Wǒ zuótian wǎnshang mǎile yidiǎnr táng. I bought a little candy last night.
 (b) Wǒmen yǐjīng chīle yìbàn 1e. We have already eaten half of it.
5. (a) Wǒ qùnián zài Zhōngguó xuéle jǐjǔ Zhōngguó huà. I learned a few sentences in Chinese last year.
 (b) Wǒmen niànle shíwǔkè 1e. We have studied fifteen lessons.

III. TIME SPENT (TIME ELEMENT FOLLOWS THE VERB)

Patterns: (1-4) Qùnián wǒ zài zhèr zhùle liǎngge yuè.

I lived here two months last year.

(5-7) Wǒmen niànle liǎngge yuède shū 1e.

We have been studying for two months already.

or Wǒmen niànshū, niànle liǎngge yuè 1e.

(lit. as to our studying, we have been studying...)

1. Wǒ xiānsheng zài wàiguo zhùle bushǎo shíhou 1e. My husband has been living abroad for quite a while.
2. Wǒ xiǎngle hěnduō shíhou 1e. Míngtiān wǒ zài xiǎngxiang. I have been thinking about this for a long time. I'll give it more thought tomorrow.
3. Tā lái le yìtiān 1e. He's been here an entire day.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4. Tā zuòle bàntiān, hòulai jiu zǒule. | He sat for a long while and then left. |
| 5. Wǒ qùnian zài nàge xuéxiàoli niǎnle jǐge yuè. | I studied in that school for a few months last year. |
| 6. Wǒ zài zhèr yǐjīng xuéle liǎnggeduō yuède Zhōngguó huà le. | I have been here studying spoken Chinese for more than two months. |
| 7. Tā xiěle hǎojǐniǎnde zì le.
or...xiězi, xiěle hǎojǐniǎn le.
Suǒyì tāde zì zuì hǎo. | He has been writing characters for a good many years, so his characters are extremely good. |

IV. ACTION (WITH -le) AND ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCES (WITH shi...de) CONTRASTED

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Wǒ qùnian dào Déguó qùle. Nǐ shì gēn shéi qùde? | Last year I went to Germany. With whom did you go? |
| 2. Wǒ jīnnian xuéle yìdiǎnr Déwén. Nǐ shì gēn shéi xuéde? | This year I studied a little German. With whom did you study? |
| 3. Wǒ shànggèyuè zài Niūyue mǎile yìge qìchē. Nǐ shì gěi shéi mǎide? | Last month I bought a car in New York. For whom did you buy it? |
| 4. Wǒ gěi tā xiěle hǎojǐfēng xìn. Nǎxie xìn shì gěi shéi xiěde? | I wrote (or for) him a good many letters. To (or for) whom did you write all those letters? |
| 5. Wǒ zuótiān jiāole yìdiǎnr shū. Nǐn shì tì shéi jiāode? | I taught a little yesterday. For whom were you substituting? |
| 6. Wǒmen jīntian zài yìge péngyou jiāli chīle Zhōngguó fàn. Nǐmen shì yòng kuàizi chīde ba? | We had (a meal of) Chinese food at a friend's home today. You ate with chopsticks, I presume? |
| 7. Wǒ duì tā shuōle hǎoxie huà. Nǎxie huà shì duì shénme rén shuōde? | I said a good many things to him. To whom were all those things said? |

FLUENCY DRILL

Niànshū.

Niàn Zhōngguo shū.

Wǒ niàn Zhōngguo shū.

Wǒmen niàn Zhōngguo shū.

Wǒmen niàn Zhōngguo shū le.

Wǒmen niànle Zhōngguo shū le.

Wǒmen niànle liǎngge yuède Zhōngguo shū le.

Wǒmen yǐjīng niànle liǎngge yuède Zhōngguo shū le.

Wǒmen zài zhèr yǐjīng niànle liǎngge yuède Zhōngguo shū le.

Wǒmen zài zhège xuéxiào yǐjīng niànle liǎngge yuède Zhōngguo shū le.

Wǒmen zài zhège xuéxiàoli yǐjīng niànle liǎngge yuède Zhōngguo shū le.

NOTES

1. SIMPLE OBJECTS AND VERB -LE ONLY: A sentence with a simple object and verb -le only, is unfinished, and requires a subsequent statement to finish the sense. Such unfinished sentences function like English dependent clauses which begin with 'when', 'after', etc. The subsequent statement is usually introduced by the fixed adverb jiu (then), which is not translated into English, and receives no stress in speaking:

Tā chīle fàn, jiu kàn bào. After he eats he reads the paper.

Tā chīle fàn, jiu kàn bào qùle. After he ate, he went off to read the paper.

Tā chīle fàn, jiu xiǎng kàn bào. After he eats, he wants to read the paper.

2. MEASURED OBJECTS AND SINGLE OR DOUBLE -LE: A sentence in which the object is measured as to number and quantity, may be said with verb -le only, or with both verb and sentence -le. Both constitute finished sentences, but there is a difference in aspect. With verb -le only, simple completion at some time in the past is indicated. With both verb and sentence -le, the action of the verb is brought down to the present, and in some way related to it. Contrast the following pairs of sentences:

Tā chīle sānwǎn fàn. He ate 3 bowls of rice.

Tā chīle sānwǎn fàn le. He has eaten 3 bowls of rice already.

Wǒ zài Zhōngguó zhùle sānnián. I (once) lived in China 3 years.

Wǒ zài Zhōngguó zhùle sānnián le. I have been living in China 3 years.

3. TIME SPENT: Expressions which indicate the period of time during which an action went on, or has been going on up to the present, or will go on at some future time, always follow the main verb of the sentence. Contrast this position with time when or time within which expressions which always precede the verb:

Wǒ qùnián zài zhèr zhù (time when). I lived here last year.

Wǒ zhè liǎngge yuè zài zhèr niànshū (time within which). The past two months I have been studying here.

Wǒ zài zhèr zhùle liǎngge yuè le (time spent). I have been living here for two months already.

When both verb and object are expressed, two patterns are used, with no difference in meaning:

- (a) The time spent element takes -de, and stands in a modifying position before the object (as in the case of modifying expressions of value, see Lesson 8, Note 2):

Wǒ zài zhèr niànle liǎngge yuède shū le. I have been studying here for two months (lit. studying two months' worth of books).

- (b) the uninflected verb and its object are first announced, then the verb repeated (with or without -le as the case may be), followed by the time spent element:

Wǒ zài zhèr niànshū, (lit. as to my studying here, I have niànle liǎngge yuè le. studied for two months already).

Note that since time spent elements constitute measured objects, sentences with time spent expressions behave with respect to -le in the same way as those described in Note 2 above.

DÌSHÍLIÙKÈ - LESSON 16

COMPOUND VERBS - EXPRESSING MANNER

Downstairs and Out!

Yǒu yitīān Zhāng Xiānsheng zhǎo wǒ láile. Wǒ cóng lóushang xiàlai, gěi tā kāi mén. Wǒ shuō: "Ou, Zhāng Xiānsheng láile! Qǐng jìnlai ba!"

One day Mr. Zhang came to look for me. I came down from upstairs to open the door for him. I said: "Oh, Mr. Zhang has come! Please come in!"

Zhāng Xiānsheng gēn wǒ zuòzai kètīngli tánle yihuǐr huà. Hòulai wǒde háizi zai lóushang jiào wǒ shuō: "Bàba, wǒmen yě yào jiànjian Zhāng Xiānsheng." Wǒ shuō: "Hǎo, kuài xiàlai ba!" Háizi jiu xiàlaile.

Mr. Zhang and I sat in the parlor and chatted awhile. Later my children upstairs called me, saying: "Papa, we want to meet Mr. Zhang, too." I said: "All right, hurry up and come down." Whereupon the children came down.

Háizimen xiàlou, xiàlaide hěn kuài, gēn Zhāng Xiānsheng shuōle liǎngju huà, jiu xiǎng chūqu wánr. Tāmen wèn wǒ kéyi bukeyi. Wǒ shuō kéyi, tāmen jiu pǎodao wàitou qù wánr qule. Háizi pǎolù, pǎode zhēn kuài!

The children came downstairs very rapidly, said a couple of words to Mr. Zhang, and then wanted to go out to play. They asked my permission, and I gave it, and they ran outside to play. Children certainly can run fast!

Hòulai wǒ tàitai yě xiàlaile, yào qǐng Zhāng Xiānsheng gēn wǒmen yikuàir chí wǎnfàn. Zhāng Xiānsheng shuō: "Hǎo, kěshi wǒ děi xiān dao xuéxiào qù kànkàn. Wǒ yihuǐr jiu zǒule."

Afterwards my wife came down to invite Mr. Zhang to have supper with us. Mr. Zhang said: "Good, but I must first return to the school to have a look. I'll be back in a few minutes."

Zhāng Xiānsheng cóng xuéxiào huílaile, wǒmen jiu zuòxia chīfàn. Chīle fàn, Zhāng Xiānsheng jiu zǒule.

After Mr. Zhang returned from the school we sat down to eat. When we had eaten Mr. Zhang left.

VOCABULARY

yihuǐr	(MA)N: (in) a moment	zhàn	V: stand
kètīng	N: parlor (guest hall)	zuò	V: sit
mén	N: door	jìn	V: enter (in)
chuānghu	N: window	chū	V: exit (out)
lù	N: road	tán	V: converse; chat about
kuài	SV: be fast, quick A: quickly, soon	tánhuà	VO: carry on conversation
màn	SV: be slow	pǎo	V: run

L. 16

děng	V: wait, wait for	bān	V: move (change residence)
jiào	V: call (some one) CV: tell, order; let	bānjiā	VO: move one's residence
jiàn	V: see, meet (more formal than kàn)	jìnchéng	VO: go into the city or downtown
guān(shang)	V: close(up) (opp. kāi)	chūmén	VO: go out (of the house)
ba	P: (sentence suffix, indicating a request)	-jǐle	P: (suffix to SVs, indicating exaggerated degree)
duìbuqǐ	IE: excuse me! I'm sorry!		

PATTERN SENTENCES

I. VERBS OF MOTION COMPOUNDED WITH LÁI AND QÙ

shànglai	come up (here)	shàngqu	go up (there)
xiàlai	come down (here)	xiàqu	go down (there)
jìnlai	come in (here)	jìnqu	go in (there)
chūlai	come out (here)	chūqu	go out (there)
huílai	come back (here)	huíqu	go back (there)
bānlai	move (here)	bānqu	move (there)

Pattern: Wǒ yào chūqu, yihuīr jiu huílai.

I'm going out, and will be back in a moment.

1. Tā jiào nǐ shàngqu, nǐ wèishénme bushàngqu?
He asked you to go up, why don't you go up?
2. Qǐng jìnlai zuò yihuīr!
Please come in and sit awhile.
3. Nàge wūzi wǒmen bunéng jìnqu.
We can't go into that room.
4. Jīntiānde bào hái méichūlai ne.
Today's paper hasn't come out yet.
5. Nín fùqin huílaile meiyou?
Has your father returned yet?
6. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ dǎi xiān huíqu.
Pardon me, but I must be getting back.
7. Nimen shi nǎtiān bānlaide?
Which day was it that you moved (here)?
8. Nimen shénme shíhou bānqu?
When do you move (there)?

II. ZAI AS A SUFFIX TO VERBS OF LOCATION

zhànzai...	stand at...
zuòzai...	sit at...
zhùzai...	live or stay at...

Pattern: Qǐng nǐ zhùzai wǒmen zhèr. Please stay here with us.

1. Qǐng nǐ zhànzai zhuōzi qiántou. Please stand in front of the table.
2. Nǐ yuànyì zuòzai nǎr? Where do you wish to sit?
3. Bié zuòzai nàge yǐzishang! Don't sit in that chair!
4. Jīntiān wǎnshàng nǐ zhùzai nǎr? Where are you stopping tonight?

III. DAO AS A SUFFIX TO VERBS OF MOTION

jìndào...(lái or qù)	enter into...(here or there)
huídào...(lái or qù)	return to...(here or there)
bāndào...(lái or qù)	move to...(here or there)
zǒudào...(lái or qù)	walk or travel to...(here or there)
pǎodào...(lái or qù)	run or hurry to...(here or there)
niàndào...	read or study to...

Pattern: Tāmen dōu bāndào Běijīng qùle.

They have all moved to Beijing.

1. Qǐng nǐ jìndào zhège wūzi lái kànkan. Come into this room and have a look.
2. Nǐ shénme shíhou huí(dào) Měiguó qù? When are you returning to America?
3. Wǒmen yào zǒudào fēijī qiántou jiu huílai. We are going to the front of the plane and then come back.
4. Háizi dōu pǎodào chéng wàitōu qù wánr qùle. The children have all run outside the city to play.
5. Nǐmen yǐjīng niàndào nǎr le? Where have you read to?

IV. DESCRIBING THE MANNER OF ACTION

(chífàn)	chīde tài kuài	eats too fast
(shuōhuà)	shuōde hěn màn shuōde yǒuyìsi	speaks very slowly talks interestingly
(xiězì)	xiěde hǎojíle	writes extremely well
(chànggē)	chàngde zhēn hǎo	really sings well
(zuòshì)	zuòde hěn hǎo	works quite well
(zǒulù)	zǒude bumàn	walks quite fast
(kāichē)	kāide bucuò	drives quite well

Vde SV

Patterns: Tā xué Zhōngguó huà, xuéde hěn kuài.

He learns Chinese very quickly (lit. as to his learning Chinese, he learns...)

or Tāde Zhōngguó huà, xuéde hěn kuài.
(lit. as to his Chinese, he learns...)

1. Nàge hái'izi chífàn, chīde tài kuài. That child eats too fast.
2. Tāde Yīngwén shuōde hěn hǎo. He speaks English very well.
3. Liú Xiānsheng xiězì, xiěde zuì hǎo. Mr. Liu writes the best (characters).
4. Zhège shìqing nǐ zuòde bucuò. You did this quite well.
5. Lǐ Xiǎojie zuò Zhōngguó fàn, zuòde zhēn hǎochī! Miss Li certainly cooks delicious Chinese food!
6. Lǎo tàitaimen zǒulù, zǒude hěn màn. Elderly ladies walk very slowly.
7. Wǒ kāichē, kāide butài hǎo. Wǒ jiějie kāide hǎojíle! I don't drive too well. My elder sister drives extremely well!

V. EXPRESSING MANNER IN COMMANDS AND REQUESTS

Patterns: Kuài shàngchē ba! Chē yihuīr jiu kāi!

All aboard! The train is about to leave!

Kuài yidiǎnr pǎo, or Pǎo kuài yidiǎnr!

Run a little faster!

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Kuài qù gēn Lǐ Xiānsheng
shuōyishuō! | Hurry up and go speak to Mr. Li
about it! |
| 2. Qǐng nǐ kuài kāikāi (or
guānshang) nàge mén (or
chuānghu)! | Please open (or close) that door
(or window) immediately! |
| 3. Tā mǔqīn jiào tā kuài zuòxia,
kěshì tā zuòxiade hěn màn. | His mother told him to sit down at
once, but he sat down very slowly. |
| 4. Piányi yidiǎnr ba! | A little cheaper, please! |
| 5. Qǐng nín màn yidiǎnr shuō! | Please say it a little slower! |
| 6. Wǒmen děi zǒu kuài yidiǎnr. | We must walk a bit faster. |
| 7. Nǐ zǒude tài kuài. Nǐ néng màn
yidiǎnr zǒu ma? | You walk too fast. Can you walk a
bit slower? |
| 8. Wǒ xīwang nín kuài yidiǎnr
huílai. | I hope you'll come back soon. |

VI. SOME OTHER COMMON COMPOUND VERBS

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Tāmen dōu huíjiāle. Zhèr yíge
rén dōu méiyǒu. | They've all gone home. There isn't
a single person here. |
| 2. Mǎ Xiānsheng huíguóle. | Mr. Ma has returned to his native
country. |
| 3. Wǒ tàitai jìndōng mǎi dōngxi
qùle. Tā yihuīr jiu huílai. | My wife has gone downtown to shop.
She'll be back in a few moments. |
| 4. Wǒ xiānsheng chūménle. Tā shuō
tā xiàyuē huílai. | My husband has gone away on a trip.
He says he's coming back next
month. |
| 5. Zhāng Taitai shàngjiēle. | Mrs. Zhang has gone shopping. |
| 6. Tāmen yǐjīng bānjiāle, bāndao
chéng wàitōu qùle. | They have already moved. They
moved outside the city. |

FLUENCY DRILL

- Háizi wánr qùle.
 Háizi qù wánr qùle.
 Háizi dōu qù wánr qùle.
 Háizi dōu dao chéng wàitōu qù wánr qùle.
 Háizi dōu dao chéng wàitōu qù wánr qùle.
 Wǒmen háizi dōu pǎodao chéng wàitōu qù wánr qùle.
 Wǒmen xiǎo háizi dōu pǎodao chéng wàitōu qù wánr qùle.
 Wǒmende xiǎo háizi dōu pǎodao chéng wàitōu qù wánr qùle.

NOTES

1. VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH LAI AND QU: The verbs lái (come) and qù (go) may be affixed to certain verbs of motion to form compound verbs, lái indicating direction toward the speaker, and qù direction away from the speaker, and toward some definite object. These compounds do not take objects, since 'here' or 'there' is inherent in them:

Wǒ bunéng xiàqu. Qǐng nǐ I can't come down. Please come up!
shànglai ba!

Note that lái and qù as suffixes never receive stress in speaking.

2. ZAI AS A VERB SUFFIX: Zài has already been presented as a main verb and as a co-verb (see Lesson 10). Zài is also used as a suffix to certain verbs of location, such as zhàn (stand), zuò (sit), zhù (live), etc. Used in this way, zài becomes part of the action itself. (Compare English prepositions which are related to verbs such as stand on, sit in, live at, etc.). In all three uses, zài requires a positional noun as object:

Qǐng nǐ zhànzai zhèr. Please stand here.

Wǒ yao zuòzai zhège yǐzishang. I want to sit on this chair.

Wǒ buxǐhuan zhùzai lǚguǎnli. I don't like to live in hotels.

3. DAO AS A VERB SUFFIX: The word dào (to) was first introduced as a co-verb of motion and direction (Lesson 11). It is also used as a suffix to certain verbs of motion, such as huí (return), bān (move), etc. The resulting compounds require positional nouns as objects. Lái and qù often follow these positional nouns as directional particles:

Wǒmen míngnián yao bāndào We are moving to Nanjing next year.
Nánjīng qù.

Háizi dōu pǎodào chéng lǐtōu The children have all run into the
qù wánr qule. city to have fun.

Note that in this last sentence denoting purpose, the final qù functions as a directional suffix (see Note 5, Lesson 11).

4. DESCRIBING MANNER: In describing the manner in which the action of a verb is carried out, a modifying clause (with -de) which contains this verb is used. This stands before the main stative verb which denotes the intensity of degree of that manner:

Tā xiěde (style) hěn hǎo. She writes very well.

Tā pǎode (speed) bumàn. She runs quite fast.

Tā chàngde (manner) hǎojíle! She sings wonderfully.

Note how this pattern resembles the basic pattern for modifying clauses (with nouns modified understood) which were first introduced in Lesson 8:

Tā chīde (food) hěn duō. She eats a lot.

Tā chàngde (song) shì Déguó gē. She is singing a German song.

When the object is expressed, it may be transposed to the front of the sentence; or the uninflected verb and its object may first be given out, then the verb repeated with -de affixed, followed by the stative verb:

Tāde zì xiěde hǎo. The characters she writes are
Tā xiězì, xiěde hǎo. well-written.

Note the similarity between this pattern (VOVde) and one of the time spent patterns (VOVle) introduced in the last lesson (see Note 3 b.).

5. EXPRESSING MANNER IN COMMANDS: In indicating the manner in which an action is expected to be performed, the unqualified adverb of manner stands immediately before the verb:

Kuài xiàlai! Hurry and come down!

Kuài lái chīfàn! Come quickly and eat!

Yidiǎnr or just diǎnr (a little) is often added to the adverb to express a greater or less degree. These qualified expressions of manner may stand just before or just after the verb:

Qǐng nǐ màn yidiǎnr shuō. Please say it a little slower.

Qǐng nǐ shuō màn yidiǎnr. (same)

Kuài diǎnr zǒu! Go a little faster!

Zǒu kuài diǎnr! (same)

6. SENTENCE SUFFIX BA, added to a command, changes its aspect to that of a mild command, request, or suggestion:

Gěi wǒ ba! Give it to me, or Better give it
to me!

Wǒmen zǒu ba! Let's be going!

Wǒmen xiān chīfàn ba! Let's eat first!

DÌSHÍQÍKÈ - LESSON 17

THE BA CONSTRUCTION - CONTINUANCE WITH -ZHE

We're Going To Move!

- A: Wǒmen yào bānjiǎ, nín tīngshuōle meiyou? We're going to move, had you heard?
- B: Tīngshuōle, suǒyì wǒ yào lái kàn nimen. Dōngxì dōu bāndào xīn fángzi qule ma? Yes, I had, so that's why I wanted to come to see you. Has everything been moved to the new house?
- A: Dà dōngxì dōu bānqule. Hái yǒu xiǎo dōngxì wǒmen zhèngzài bān ne. The large things have all been moved. There is still some small stuff which we are just in the midst of moving.
- B: Wǒ kéyì bāng nimen bǎ jǐjiàn xiǎo dōngxì bānqu, hǎo buhǎo? How about letting me help you move a few of the little things?
- A: Nín yǒu qìchē ma? Do you have a car?
- B: Yǒu. Yes, I do.
- A: Nín méi gōngfú ba? You don't have time, do you?
- B: Wǒ jīntiān yìdiǎnr shì dōu meiyǒu. I haven't a thing to do today.
- A: Wǒmen jiālìde shū bushǎo. Bùzhīdào nín néng bunéng bǎ zhèxiē shū gěi wǒmen bānqu. We have quite a few books in our home. I don't know whether or not you could move these books for us?
- B: Dōu fàngzài shūfángli ma? Are they all to be put in the study?
- A: Dōu zài shūfángli fàngzhe bùxíng. Méi dìfang. Wǒmen xiǎng ba chuānghu dīxia naxiē shū fàngzài kètīngli. It won't do to have them all in the study. No room. We think we will put the books which are under the window in the living room.
- B: Hái yǒu shénme? Anything else?
- A: Hái yǒu zhè liǎngge xiǎo zhuōzi. There are still these two tables.
- B: Hǎo, wǒ xiān bǎ zhèjǐjiàn sòngqu, huílái zài nà biéde. Good, I'll take these few pieces first, and when I get back I'll take some other things.
- A: Láojià, láojià! I'm putting you to a lot of trouble!
- B: Méi shénme! That's nothing at all!

VOCABULARY

-jiàn	M: article, piece, item	fàng	V: let go of; put, place
fàntīng	N: dining room (eating hall)	bān	V: move (heavier articles)
shūfáng	N: study, den (book room)	dài	V: take or bring along
dì(xia)	N: ground, floor	sòng	V: send, deliver (things), send escort, see off
shǒu	N: hand	sòng(gěi)	V: present as a gift
tóu	N: head	bāng(zhu)	V: help (some one)
kǒudair	N: pocket	bāngmáng	VO: render assistance
zhèng(zai)	A: just in the midst of	náqilai	V: pick up
zài	A: again (in future)	fàngxia(lai)	V: put down
yòu	A: again (in past)	-zhe	P: (verb suffix, indicating continuance)
bǎ	CV: (brings object to front of main verb)	-r	P: (diminutive suffix to nouns)
ná	V: take hold of; take, carry (smaller articles)	láojià!	IE: may I trouble you? much obliged!

PATTERN SENTENCESI. THE BA CONSTRUCTION

S CV - N V (O)

Pattern: Wǒ bǎ shū fàngzai zhuōzishang le.

I have put the books on the table.

1. Nǐmen míngtiān kéyi bǎ nǐmende shū dōu nálai.
2. Nǐ kéyi bǎ nǐde háizi jiàolai.
3. Nǐmen jīntiān bǎ bǐ dàilaile meiyou?
4. Wǒ zuótian méibǎ wǒ háizi dàiqù. Tā buyuànyì qù.
5. Nǐmen yǐjīng bǎ dōngxi dōu bānqùle ma?
6. Nǐ bǎ wǒ xiěde nǎfēng xìn sòngqùle meiyou?

L. 17

7. Kuài yidiǎnr	bǎ zhège ròu	názǒu!
8. Shéi	bǎ wǒde bǐ	názǒule?
9. Bié	bǎ mén (or chuānghu)	kāikai!
10. Láojià, qīng nín	bǎ mén (or chuānghu)	guānshang diǎnr!
11. Nǐmen búyao	bǎ màozi	dàishang.
12. Qīng nǐ	bǎ shàngtoudede nàběn shū	náxiālai, gěi wǒ.
13. Nǐmen kéyi	bǎ nǐmende yìsi	xiěxiālai.
14.	Bǎ nà liǎngge yīzi	bānjīnlai ba.
15. Wǒ jiào háizi	bǎ kǒudairlǐde dōngxi	dōu náchulai.
16. Nǐ kéyi zài	bǎ nǐde yìsi	shuōchulai.
17. Tā yòu	bǎ tāde yìsi	shuōchulaile.
18. Láojià, qīng nín	bǎ wǒde màozi	náshangqu.
19. Nǐ wèishénme	bùbǎ zhège dà zhuōzi	bānchūqu?
20. Qīng nǐ	bǎ zhège	fàngzai lóushang.
21.	Bǎ nǐde shǒu	fàngzai nǐde kǒudairlǐ.
22. Nǐ yīngdāng	bǎ zhèxiē shū	gēn nàxiē fàngzai yikuàir.
23.	Bǎ nàzhāng huàr	nádao wǒ zhèr lái.
24. Qīng nǐ bāng wǒ	bǎ zhè jǐge yīzi	bāndao lóushang qù.
25. Bié	bǎ nǐde péngyou	dàidao lóuxià qù.
26. Nǐ kéyi	bǎ nǐde qìchē	kāidao fángzi hòutou qu.
27. Kuài	bǎ zhèfēng xīn	sòngdao wǒ jiāli qu!
28. Wǒ yījīng	bǎ wǒ nage qìchē	mǎigěi nage rén le.
29. Wǒ buyuànyì	bǎ zhèzhāng huàr	sònggěi biéren.
30. Tā cháng	bǎ nage gùshi	shuōgěi rén tīng.
31. Tāmen yījīng	bǎ xiǎo háir	dàihuī jiā qule.
32. Wǒmen búbi	bǎ nàxiē dōngxi	dōu bānjīn zhège wǒzi lai.
33. Wǒ yījīng	bǎ wǒde qìchē	màile.
34. Nǐmen dōu	bǎ shū	kànle ma?
35. Qīng nǐ	bǎ nǐde bǐ	gěi wǒ. Wǒ yao kànyikan.

36. Tā hái	méibǎ qián	dōu gěi wǒ ne.
37. Nǐ búyào	bǎ zhèjian shì	gàosong rén!
38. Wǒ bunéng	bǎ tāde shìqing	dōu gàosong nǐ.
39. Nǐ yiding děi	bǎ zhège shìqing	gēn ta shuōyishuo.
40. Tā	bǎ huà	shuōle jiu zǒule.

II. CONTINUANCE WITH VERB -ZHE

zhànzhe	standing	zǒuzhe	walking
zuòzhe	sitting	děngzhe	waiting, waiting for
zhùzhe	living, staying	dàizhe	taking or carrying along
názhe	taking, carrying	kāizhe	being open
fàngzhe	lying (of things)	guānzhe	being shut

Patterns: (1-5) Qǐng nǐ zài zhèr děngzhe wǒ. Wǒ yihuīr jiu huílai.

Please wait here for me. I'll be back in a moment.

(6-10) Nǐ dàizhe hái'zi qù ma?

Are you taking the children along?
(lit. taking-children go).

1. Nǐ wèishénme zhànzhe? Zuòxia ba! Why are you standing? Sit down!
2. Tā shuō cháng zai yíge dìfang zhùzhe méiyìsi. He says that always living in one place is dull.
3. Nǐde bǐ zai zhuōzishang fàngzhe. Your pen is lying on the table.
4. Nǐ shǒuli názhe shénme? What are you holding in your hand?
5. Guānzhe chuānghu buhǎo. Kāizhe yidiǎnr hǎo. It's not good to keep the window closed. It's better to keep it open a little.
6. Rénrén dōu xǐhuan zuòzhe chīfàn. Everybody likes to eat sitting down.
7. Tāmen zai wàitou zhànzhe tánle bushǎode huà. They stood outside chatting for quite a while.
8. Nǐmen méidàizhe xiǎo dìdi qù ma? Méiyóu. Didn't you take 'little brother' along? No, we didn't.
9. Wǒmen zǒuzhe shuō ba. Let's talk about this as we walk.
10. Yǒude rén kànzhe shū chīfàn. Some people read while eating.

III. REVIEW OF CONTINUANCE WITH SENTENCE NE

Pattern: Lǐ Xiānsheng zai nǎr ne? Tā zai jiā ne.

Where is Mr. Li? He's at home.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Tā zai jiā zuo shénme ne?
Chīfàn ne. | What's he doing at home? Eating. |
| 2. Lǐ Tàitai zai nǎr ne? Tā zai
chúfángli zuòfàn ne. | Where's Mrs. Li? She's in the
kitchen cooking. |
| 3. Nǐ xiěle nàfēng xìn le meiyou?
Wǒ zhèng xiě ne. | Have you written that letter? I'm
just writing it. |
| 4. Bié nǎzǒu, wǒ hái yào ne. | Don't take it away, I still want
some. |
| 5. Wǒmen zhèr hái yǒu ne. Nǐ hái
yào ma? | We still have some here. Do you
still want some? |

IV. CONTINUANCE WITH BOTH VERB -ZHE AND SENTENCE NE

Pattern: Nǐde biǎo hái zai zhuōzishang fàngzhe ne.

Your watch is still lying on the table.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Tāmen hái zai nǎr zhànzhe
shuōhuà ne. | They are still standing there
talking. |
| 2. Tā mǔqīn zai Nánjīng zhùzhe ne. | His mother is living in Nanjing. |
| 3. Nǐ shóuli nǎzhe shénme ne? | What are you holding in your hand? |
| 4. Nǐ tàitai zai xuéxiào děngzhe
nǐ ne. | Your wife is at the school waiting
for you. |
| 5. Mén kāizhe ne, kěshi tāmen bǎ
chuānghu dōu guānshàngle. | The door is open, but they have
closed all the windows. |

CLASSROOM ACTIVITY

Bǎ bǐ náqilai.
Bǎ bǐ fàngxia.

Pick up the pen.
Put the pen down.

Zài náqilai.
Zài fàngxia.

Take it up again.
Put it down again.

Bǎ bǐ gěi wǒ.

Give the pen to me.

Náhuìqu.
Zài gěi wǒ.
Nǎzǒu.

Take it back.
Give it to me again.
Take it away.

Bǎ bǐ nádao wàitou qu.	Take the pen outside.
Nájinlai.	Bring it in.
Zài náchuqu.	Take it out again.
Náhuilai.	Bring it back.
Bǎ bǐ fàngzai nǐde tóushang.	Place the pen on your head.
Náxialai.	Take it off.
Bǎ bǐ fàngzai nǐde kǒudaili.	Put the pen in your pocket.
Náchulai.	Take it out.
Zài fàngjinqu.	Put it in again.
Bǎ bǐ fàngzai dìxia.	Put the pen on the floor.
Náqilai.	Pick it up.
Bǎ bǐ gēn shū fàngzai yikuàir.	Put the pen and book together.
Bǎ bǐ nádao wǒ zhèr lái.	Bring the pen to me here.
Fàngzai wǒde shǒushang.	Place it on my hand.
Názǒu.	Take it away.

FLUENCY DRILL

Dàizhe háizi.

Dàizhe xiǎoháizi.

Dàizhe nǐ xiǎoháizi.

Dàizhe nǐmen xiǎoháizi.

Dàizhe nǐmende xiǎoháizi.

Dàizhe nǐmende xiǎoháizi qù.

Dàizhe nǐmende xiǎoháizi qù ma?

Nǐmen dàizhe nǐmende xiǎoháizi qù ma?

Nǐmen míngnián dàizhe nǐmende xiǎoháizi qù ma?

Nǐmen míngnián qù, dàizhe nǐmende xiǎoháizi qù ma?

Nǐmen míngnián dao Zhōngguo qù, dàizhe nǐmende xiǎoháizi qù ma?

NOTES

1. THE BA CONSTRUCTION: The co-verb bǎ serves to draw the object of the sentence up to just in front of the main verb, from which position it receives the action of that verb. One of the commonest uses of the bǎ construction is in sentences with compound verbs ending in lái and qù:

L. 17

Qǐng nǐ bǎ nǐde shū nádao wǒ zhèr lái. Please bring your book here to me.

Bǎ yǐzi bānchūqu. Move the chairs out.

Wǒ yǐjing bǎ qìchē mǎile. I have already sold the car.

Note that no attempt is made to give an English equivalent for bǎ, or to translate literally sentences using the bǎ construction.

2. COMPOUND VERBS AS SUFFIXES: Verbs compounded with lái or qù serve not only as main verbs (as shown in the last lesson), but they in turn may be suffixed to certain other verbs, such as, ná (take), dài (take along), bān (move), zǒu (walk), pǎo (run), etc.:

Wǒmen shì zǒushàngqùde. We walked up.

Bǎ zhuōzi bānjīnlái. Move the table in.

Tāmen bǎ hái zi dōu dài huīqule. They have taken all the children back with them.

When a specific place is indicated, these combinations split up, and an appropriate place noun inserted just before the final -lái or -qù:

Bǎ yǐzi bānjīn fàntīngli lái. Bring the chairs into the dining room.

Tā pǎohuī jiā qule. He has run back home.

Bǎ zhèběn shū náhuī xuéxiào qu. Take this book back to the school.

3. CONTINUANCE WITH VERB -ZHE: The addition of the particle -zhe to a limited number of verbs prolongs the action of these verbs:

Wǒ jiù zài zhèr zhàn zhe ba. I'll just be standing here.

Zǒuzhe hǎo. It would be better to walk (lit. walking is better).

Verbs with -zhe also serve adverbially to describe the manner in which the action of the main verbs which immediately follow is carried out:

Wǒmen kéyǐ zuòzhe tánhuà. We may sit down to chat (lit. sitting chat).

Wǒmen shì zǒuzhe qùde. We walked there (lit. walking went).

A sentence may have both verb -zhe and sentence ne, as for example:

Chuānghu guānzhe ne. The window is shut.

Tāmen zhèngzài chīzhe fàn ne. They are just in the midst of eating.

4. DIMINUTIVE SUFFIX -R: The suffix -r is commonly added to a large number of nouns. It is not pronounced as a separate syllable, and usually modifies the primary form of the word to which it is attached. It is derived from ér (child, smallness), but its effect on a word is not limited to this elemental meaning. Compare the words with the suffix -r already learned:

huàr, gēr, zhèr, nàr, nār?, sháor, xiǎoháir,

fànguǎnr, kǒudàir, yidiǎnr, yihuǐr, yikuàir

Note that many other nouns already learned may take this suffix.

DÌSHÍBÁKÈ - LESSON 18

CHANGED STATUS AND IMMINENT ACTION WITH -LE

"COMING, MOTHER!"

Wǒ yǒu yige Měiguó péngyou. Tā yǒu
yige xiǎo nǚhái'r jiào - ài, wǒ
wàngle! Nà búyào jīn, wǒmen kéyǐ
jiào tā Xiǎo Māor!

I have an American friend. He has
a little girl named - oh, I've
forgotten! Never mind, we can
call her Kitty.

Xiǎo Māor jīnnian bāsùile. Yǒu
yitiān tā zài lóushang gēn tā dìdì
wánr. Tā mǔqīn zài chūfángli
zuòfàn.

Kitty is eight years old this year.
One day she was upstairs playing
with her little brother. Her
mother was in the kitchen cooking.

Nàtiān tā mǔqīn hěn máng, suǒyǐ tā
xiǎng zhǎo Xiǎo Māor bāngmáng.
"Xiǎo Māor, nǐ lái bāng wǒ yidiǎnr
máng!" "Láile! Láile!" - kěshi
Xiǎo Māor méiqù.

Her mother was very busy that day,
so she wanted to get Kitty to help.
"Kitty, come and help me!"
"Coming! Coming!" - but she didn't
go.

Tā mǔqīn yòu jiào tā: "Xiǎo Māor,
kuài xiàlai!" "Láile! Láile!" -
kěshi tā hái shì méiqù.

Her mother called her again: "Kitty,
hurry and come down!" "Coming,
coming!" - but still she didn't
go.

Mǔqīn disānci jiào tāde nǚer:
"Xiǎo Māor, nǐ zěnme bulái?
Xiànzài nǐ búbi láile. Wǒ búyòng
nǐ bāngmáng le."

The mother called her daughter for
the third time: "Kitty, why don't
you come? Now you don't need to
come. I don't need your help any
longer."

Xiǎo Māor tīngjian zhège huà jiu
xiàqùle. Tā mǔqīn hěn shēngqì.
"Wǒ jiào nǐ, nǐ wèishénme bulíkè
lái?"

When Kitty heard this she went down.
Her mother was very angry. "Why
don't you come immediately when
I call?"

Xiǎo Māor kūzhe duì tā mǔqīn shuō:
"Mā, wǒ zhēn duìbuqǐ nín. Nín
xiàci zài jiào wǒ, wǒ yiding lìkè
jiu lái."

Kitty, crying, said to her mother:
"Mama, I am really sorry. When
you call me again the next time,
I'll come right away."

Tā mǔqīn tīngjian zhège huà jiu
bùshēngqìle.

When her mother heard this, she was
no longer angry.

VOCABULARY

cóngqián	MA: formerly	-suì	M: year(s) old
měi-	NU: each	bìng	N: sickness
-huí	M: a time; occurrence	diǎnxīn	N: light refreshments
-cì	M: a time; occasion	chúfáng	N: kitchen

búdà	A: not very	shēngqì	SV: get angry, be angry
jiù	A: at once	yǒubìng	SV: be sick
lìkè(jiù)	A: immediately	kū	V: cry, cry about
zěnmē	A: why? how is it that?	wàng	V: forget
qīngchū	SV: be clear (in meaning)	míngbái	V: understand (clearly)
gāoxíng	SV: be happy, in high spirits	kànjiàn	V: see
shūfu	SV: be comfortable	tīngjiàn	V: hear
būshūfu	SV: be uncomfortable; indisposed, not feel well	bìngle	V: become sick
huài	SV: be bad	hǎole	V: be well again; it's ready, done
buhuài	SV: be not bad, pretty good	huàile	V: become spoiled, get out of order
zěn(me)le	IE: what's happened? what's the matter?	tóu-	P: first (see Note 5)

PATTERN SENTENCES

I. CHANGED STATUS WITH -LE

Patterns: (1-4) Háizi dōu dàle (or buxiǎole).

The children are all grown now (or quite big).

(5-8) Qīng nín zài chí yidiǎnr. Buchile, xièxie.

Have a little more. No more, thank you.

(9-12) Wǒ xiànzài huì shuō Zhōngguó huà le!

Now I can speak Chinese!

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Xiànzài dōngxi dōu guǎile. | Everything has become expensive now. |
| 2. Wǒ zuótiān mǎide ròu yǐjīng huàile. | The meat I bought yesterday has already gone bad. |
| 3. Tā fùqīn lǎole, bunnéng zuò shìle. | His father has aged, and can't work any more. |
| 4. Tā zuótiān hěn hǎo, kěshì jīntiān tā yòu buhǎole. | He was fine yesterday, but today he is bad again. |

L. 18

- | | |
|---|--|
| 5. Zuótiān tā shuō tā yíding lái.
Jīntiān tā shuō bú lái. | Yesterday he said he would surely come. Today he says he's not coming after all. |
| 6. Nín míngtiān hái qù buqu?
Bùqù. | Are you still going tomorrow? No, I'm not going after all. |
| 7. Nín hái yào shénme? Búyào shénme le. | What else do you want? Nothing now. |
| 8. Nǐmen hái yǒu táng meiyǒu?
Méiyǒu. | Do you have any more sugar? No, we don't have any more. |
| 9. Wǒ cóngqián huì shuō Fǎwén.
Xiànzài búhuì shuō. | Once I could speak French. Now I can't speak it any longer. |
| 10. Cóngqián wǒ búài chī Zhōngguó fàn.
Xiànzài wǒ hěn ài chī le. | Formerly I didn't like Chinese food. Now I have come to love it. |
| 11. Tā qùnián méiqián, kěshi tā jīnnián yǒuqián. | He was poor last year, but now this year he has become rich. |
| 12. Wǒ xiǎode shíhou xǐhuan chànggē.
Xiànzài wǒ búda xǐhuan le. | When I was small I liked to sing. Now I don't care much for it. |

II. IMMINENT ACTION WITH -LE

A Vle

Patterns: (1-3) Zhāng Xiānsheng kuài lái.

Mr. Zhang will be coming soon.

AV V(O) le

(4-7) Wǒmen yào chīfàn le.

We're about to eat now.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Chīfànde shíhou kuài dào. | It's almost time to eat. |
| 2. Kuài kāichē! Qǐng shàngchē! | Train is about to leave! All aboard. |
| 3. Wǒmen yihuīr jiu shàngkè. | We will be going to class shortly. |
| 4. Lǐ Xiānsheng jiù yào zǒu. | Mr. Li will be leaving presently. |
| 5. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ děi huíqù. | I'm sorry but I must be getting back. |
| 6. Shíhou dào, wǒmen děi zǒu. | Time's up, we must be going. |
| 7. Wǒ xiǎng tā míngtiān jiu hǎo. | I think he will be all right tomorrow. |

III. USE OF MEASURES -CI AND -HUI

(a) following Time When pattern (precedes verb)

Pattern: Wǒ shàngci qù méikànjian nǐ.

The last time I went I didn't see you.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Xiàhui wǒ yídìng gēn nǐ qù. | I'll certainly go with you the next time. |
| 2. Wǒ tóuliǎngci qù, tāmen gēn wǒ hěn hǎo. Wǒ zhèliǎngci qù, tāmen gēn wǒ shēngqìle. Bùzhidào wèishénme. | The first two times I went they were lovely to me. The last two times they were angry with me. Don't know why. |
| 3. Zhè shì wǒ dièrhui chī Zhōngguó fàn. Tóuyihuí shì zài Lǐ Xiānsheng jiā chīde. | This is the second time I have eaten Chinese food. The first time was at Mr. Li's home. |
| 4. Wǒ měici dào tā jiā qu, tā dōu gěi wǒ chá hē, gěi wǒ diǎnxīn chī. | Each time I go to his house, he gives me tea and cakes. |

(b) following Time Spent pattern (follows verb)

Pattern: Wǒ jiù kànjian tā yihuí.

I only saw him once.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Tā qùnián dào Fǎguó qùle liǎngcì. | He went to France twice last year. |
| 2. Nǐ dào Niǔyuè qùle duōshao huí le? | How many times have you been to New York? |
| 3. Wǒ dào tā jiā qùle hǎojǐcì le. | I have been to his home a good many times. |
| 4. Tā shuōle sìwǔhuí, wǒ hái shì bumíngbai tāde yìsi. | He said it four or five times, but I didn't get his meaning. |
| 5. Qǐng nín zài shuō yihuí. | Please say it again. |

IV. REVIEW OF VERBS REDUPLICATED

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Wǒ mǎile yige xīn biǎo. Qǐng nǐ kànyikan. | I have bought a new watch. Have a look at it. |
| 2. Mǎ Xiānsheng kuài lái le. Qǐng nǐ zài zhèr děngyíděng (or děng-yihuí). | Mr. Ma will be here soon. Please wait here. |
| 3. Tā qǐng wǒ jìnqu zuòyízuò, wǒ jiù jìnqu zuòle yízuò. Hòulai wǒ jiù zǒule. | He asked me in to sit awhile. I went in and sat awhile, and then left. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4. Wǒmen zài wàitōu zǒule yìzǒu. | We took a stroll outside. |
| 5. Wǒde bǐ méiyǒule. Qǐng nǐ bāng wǒ zháozhao. | My pen is gone. Please help me hunt for it. |
| 6. Wǒ buhuì yòng kuàizi. Wǒ děi xuéyixué. | I don't know how to use chopsticks. I must learn. |
| 7. Tā yào chàng jǐge gē. Wǒmen qù tīngtīng, hǎo buhǎo? | He's going to sing a few songs. Let's go and listen in. |
| 8. Wǒ míngtiān bulái. Qǐng nǐ tī wǒ gēn xiānsheng shuōyìshuō. | I'm not coming tomorrow. Please say a word to the teacher about it for me. |
| 9. Wǒ yòu xiǎng le yìxiǎng, háishi méiqù. | I thought it over again, and still didn't go. |

FLUENCY DRILL

Shuō sāncì.

Shuōle sāncì.

Tā shuōle sāncì.

Tā gěi wǒ shuōle sāncì.

Tā bǎ shì gěi wǒ shuōle sāncì.

Tā bǎ shìqing gěi wǒ shuōle sāncì.

Tā bǎ nàjian shìqing gěi wǒ shuōle sāncì.

Tā jiu bǎ nàjian shìqing gěi wǒ shuōle sāncì.

Wǒ qù, tā jiu bǎ nàjian shìqing gěi wǒ shuōle sāncì.

Wǒ qù kàn tā, tā jiu bǎ nàjian shìqing gěi wǒ shuōle sāncì.

Wǒ tóuyihuí qù kàn tā, tā jiu bǎ nàjian shìqing gěi wǒ shuōle sāncì.

NOTES

1. CHANGED STATUS WITH -LE: It has been seen that the particle -le, whether as verb suffix or sentence final, basically indicates completion of action, without respect to tense. However, in actual use it most often points to completion of action at some time in the past. One aspect of completed action in the past with -le needs to be pointed out, chiefly because certain additional English words are usually needed to convey the sense, namely, that of changed status. Three common patterns are found:

- (a) The addition of -le to stative verbs in their positive or negative forms (with bu-), leads to a changed condition or state of affairs:

Tā yǐjīng hǎole. He is already well again.
 Gòu bugou? Gòule. Is that enough? Yes, that will be enough.
 Xiànzài bunánle. It's not difficult any more.
 Tā méixīwangle. There's no hope for him now.

Note that the verb-object méixīwang may be regarded as a stative verb (compare yǒuqián, méiyìsi, etc.).

- (b) The addition of -le to the negative form (with bu-) of sentences containing other than stative verbs also implies a change in condition or intention:

Tā buyào. He doesn't want (it) any more.
 Wǒ buqù. I'm not going after all.
 Wǒmen búzai zhèr zhù. We're not living here any more.

- (c) The addition of -le to some statements using auxiliary verbs also denotes a change of status:

Wǒmen dōu huì shuō yìdiǎnr Now we can all speak a little
 Zhōngguó huà le. Chinese.
 Wǒ buxiǎng qù. I don't care to go any longer.
 Nǐ búbi láile. You don't need to come after this.
 Wǒ búai chī táng le. I don't like to eat candy any more.

2. IMMINENT ACTION WITH -LE: The addition of -le to verbs modified by appropriate adverbs (such as kuài, soon), or to verbs or sentences using certain auxiliary verbs (such as yào, going to), indicates that the action has already been decided upon, and that it is expected to be completed at some time in the not too distant future:

Lǐ Xiānsheng kuài lái. Mr. Li will be here soon.
 Háizi kuài hǎole. The child is almost well.
 Wǒmen yào chīfàn. We're about to eat.
 Wǒ děi zǒule. Zàijiàn ba! I must be going. See you again!

3. THE MEASURES -CÌ AND -HUÍ: Specified occasions with the measures -cì or -huí follow the time when pattern, and precede the verb:

Wǒ dìyíqù qù, tā búzai jiā. The first time I went, he wasn't home.

Tā zhèjǐhuí lái méidàizhe màozi. The last few times he came he didn't wear a hat.

Frequency of occurrences with -cì or huí follow the time spent pattern, and come after the verb:

Wǒ qùle hǎojǐhuí le. I have been there a good many times already.

Wǒ qù kànle liǎngcì jiu buzài qùle. I went to see it a couple of times, and then didn't go any more.

When an object is expressed, the frequency expression stands after the verb and before this object:

Wǒ chīle liǎngcì Éguó fàn le. I have eaten Russian food twice.

EXCEPTION: When this object is a person or a place, the frequency expression stands after the object:

Wǒ qùnian kànjian tā shíjǐhuí. I saw him more than ten times last year.

Wǒ shàng Niūyue bùshǎocì le. I've been to New York quite a few times up till now.

Wǒ gào(1e) song tā hǎojǐcì le. I've told him a good many times.

4. REDUPLICATED VERBS AND COMPLETED ACTION: It was noted in Lesson 9, Note 5, that certain active verbs are sometimes doubled, and that this often gives casualness to the sense. When completed action is indicated, the particle -le is attached to the first verb only:

Wǒmen zài wàitou zǒule yizǒu. We took a stroll outside.

Wǒ xiǎngle yixiǎng jiu qùle. I thought it over and went.

5. ORDINALIZING PREFIXES DÌ- AND TÓU- CONTRASTED: The ordinalizing prefix dì- is equivalent to the English endings -st, -nd, -rd, etc., and signifies any single unit of a series (as diyī, number one, dièr, the second one, etc.).

The ordinalizing prefix tóu-, on the other hand, denotes the first one or more persons or things (as tóuyīgè, the first one, tóuliǎnggè rén, the first two persons, tóushítiān, the first ten days, etc.).

6. JIUSHI, ETC.: The addition of shì to certain adverbs such as jiù (just), hái (still), etc., serves to make them more emphatic:

Wǒ jiùshì bùxǐhuan zuǒfàn. I just simply don't like to cook.

Tā hái shì méilái. He still hasn't come.

Hái shì zhègè hǎo. After all this is better.

Nàgè hái zi zhēn shì cōngmíng. That child is really bright.

DÌSHÍJIŪKÈ - LESSON 19

READING THE CLOCK - SUPPOSITION

What Do You Do All Day?

- A: Nǐ měitiān zǎoshang shénme shíhou qǐlai? What time do you get up each morning?
- B: Wǒ měitiān chàbuduō liùdiǎn zhōng qǐlai. I get up at about six o'clock each day.
- A: Nǐ jǐdiǎn zhōng chí zǎofàn? What time do you eat breakfast?
- B: Liùdiǎn sānkè. At quarter to seven.
- A: Nǐ shénme shíhou jìnchéng? When do you go into the city?
- B: Wǒ qīdiǎn yíkè shàng qìchēzhàn. Chē qīdiǎn sìshiwǔ kāi. I go to the bus station at 7:15. The bus leaves at 7:45.
- A: Nǐ měitiān zuòshì zuò jǐge zhōngtóu? How many hours do you work each day?
- B: Qīge zhōngtóu. Shàngwǔ, cóng bādiǎnbàn zuòdao shièrdiǎn; xiàwǔ, cóng yīdiǎn yíkè zuòdao sìdiǎn sānkè. Yàoshi shìqing máng, wǒ jiù zuòdao wǔdiǎnduō zhōng. Seven hours. I work forenoons from 8:30 until 12:00; afternoons from 1:15 until 4:45. If work is pressing, then I work until after five o'clock.
- A: Wǎnshang nǐ búzuòshì ba? You don't work evenings, do you?
- B: Wǎnshang wǒ búzuòshì. Cóngqián wǒ wǎnshang chángcháng zuò liǎngge zhōngtóu de shì, kěshì xiànzài wǒ lǎole, wǎnshang bunéng zuòshìle! No, I don't work evenings. I used to work two hours every evening, but now I'm old and can no longer work evenings!
- A: Nǐ méi shì de shíhou zuò shénme? What do you do when you are not working?
- B: Yǒude shíhou wǒ zài shūfángli kànkān shū, yǒude shíhou wǒ zài lóushang gēn háizimen wánr. Sometimes I read in the study, sometimes I play upstairs with the children.
- A: Hǎo, tiān buzǎole, wǒ děi zǒule. Zàijiàn ba! Well, it's getting late, and I must be going. I'll be seeing you!
- B: Zàijiàn! Goodbye!

VOCABULARY

shàngwǔ (MA)N: forenoon

xiàwǔ (MA)N: afternoon

zhōngwǔ (MA)N: noon

báitiān (MA)N: daytime, during the day

L. 19

yèli	(MA)N: nighttime, during the night	wǎn	SV: be late
yíyè	(MA)N: a night; the whole night	hēi	SV: be black; dark
gāngcái	MA: just a moment ago	bái	SV: be white; fair
yàoshi	MA: if, in case	liǎng	SV: be light or bright (opp. dark)
-diǎn	M: hour	gāng(gāng)	A: just this minute
-kè	M: quarter-hour	chà	A: differ by; lack, be short
-fēn	M: minute	kě	A: indeed, certainly, however
-yè	M: night	guò	V: pass, exceed; cross over
rìzi	N: day; a special day	qǐlai	V: rise, get up
zhōngtóu	N: an hour	gàosong	V: tell, inform
wǔfàn	N: noon meal	chàbuduō	IE: almost, about
zǎo	SV: be early	zěnme bàn?	IE: what can be done about it?

POINTS IN TIME, BY THE CLOCK

Question: Shénme shíhou(1e)? What time is it?

Jīdiǎn zhōng(1e)? What time is it?

yìdiǎn zhōng	1:00 o'clock
yìdiǎn shífēn	1:10
yìdiǎn shíwǔfēn (or yìdiǎn yìkè)	1:15 or quarter past one)
yìdiǎn èrshífēn	1:20
yìdiǎn sānshífēn (or yìdiǎnbàn)	1:30 or half past one)
yìdiǎn sìshífēn	1:40
yìdiǎn sìshíwǔfēn (or yìdiǎn sānkè)	1:45 or quarter to two)
yìdiǎn wǔshífēn	1:50
liǎngdiǎn zhōng	2:00 o'clock
liǎngdiǎnduō zhōng	after 2 o'clock

AMOUNTS OF TIME, BY THE CLOCK

Question: Nǐ kànshū, kànle duōshao shíhou le?

...kànle jǐge zhōngtóu le?

How long have you been reading?

yīfēn zhōng	one minute	yìdiǎnduō zhōng	over an hour
liǎngfēn zhōng	two minutes	yìdiǎn(líng)shífēn	1 hr. 10 mins.
sìwǔfēn zhōng	4 or 5 minutes	yìdiǎn sānkè zhōng	1 and 3/4 hrs.
shíjǐfēn zhōng	'10 or 15' minutes	bānge zhōngtóu	a half hour
shíwǔfēn zhōng	15 minutes (or yīkè zhōng 1/4 hour)	yíge zhōngtóu	an hour
sānshífēn zhōng	30 minutes (or bàndiǎn zhōng 1/2 hour)	yígeduō zhōngtóu	over an hour
sìshíwǔfēn zhōng	45 minutes (or sānkè zhōng 3/4 hour)	yígebàn zhōngtóu	1 and a half hrs.
yìdiǎn zhōng	an hour	liǎngge zhōngtóu	two hours
		sìwǔge zhōngtóu	4 or 5 hours
		shíjǐge zhōngtóu	'10 or 15' hrs.

PATTERN SENTENCESI. TIME WHEN, BY THE CLOCK

Patterns: Chē shénme shíhou kāi? Chē liǎngdiǎn zhōng kāi.

When does the train leave? It leaves at two o'clock.

Nǐ měitiān jǐdiǎn zhōng chí wǔfàn? Shíèrdiǎnbàn.

When do you eat lunch each day? At twelve-thirty.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Chē shénme shíhou dào? Xiàwǔ sāndiǎnwǔshífēn dào. | When does the train arrive? At 3:50 P.M. |
| 2. Wǒmen míngtiān jǐdiǎn zhōng qù? Zǎoshang jiǔdiǎn zhōng, hǎo buhao? | What time tomorrow shall we go? How about 9:00 o'clock in the morning? |
| 3. Nǐ xiàlǐbaisān jǐdiǎn zhōng dào wǒ zhèr lái? Wǒ shídiǎnsānkè lái. | At what hour are you coming here next Wednesday? I'm coming at a quarter to eleven. |
| 4. Wáng Xiānsheng shì shénme shíhou zǒude? Tā shì jīntiān shàngwǔ shíyìdiǎnshífēn zǒude. | When did Mr. Wang leave? He left this forenoon at ten past eleven o'clock. |

L. 19

- | | |
|--|--|
| 5. Lǐ Tàitai shì jīdiǎn zhōng dao chéng lītou qūde? Xiǎowǔ sāndiǎnbàn. | When did Mrs. Li go downtown? At half past three. |
| 6. Chē shì jīdiǎn zhōng dào zhèr de? (or dào de zhèr?) Sìdiǎnyikè. | When did the train arrive here? Quarter past four. |
| 7. Nǐmen zuótian shì shénme shíhou shuǐjiàode? (or shuǐ de jiào?) Chàbuduō yèli yīdiǎn zhōng le! | What time did you get to bed last night? It was almost one o'clock! |
| 8. Qǐng nǐ míngtiān zǎo yīdiǎnr lái. Wǒ qīdiǎn sīshífen lái, xíng buxíng? | Please come a little earlier tomorrow morning. Would twenty to eight be all right? |

II. TIME SPENT, BY THE CLOCK

Patterns: Wǒmen měitiān shàng sìge zhōngtóu de kè.

Wǒmen měitiān shàngkè, shàng sìge zhōngtóu.

We attend classes four hours a day.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Wǒ jīntiān yǐjīng niǎnle bāge zhōngtóu de shū le. Nà kě zhēn bushǎo! | I have already studied eight hours today. That's really quite a lot! |
| 2. Tā gēn wǒ tánle yígeduō zhōngtóu de huà jiù huíqùle. | He chatted with me an hour and more, and then returned. |
| 3. Tā gēn wǒmen háizi wǎnrle chàbuduō sānge zhōngtóu le. | He played with our children for about three hours. |
| 4. Wǒ děng ta sānke zhōng le ¹ . Wǒ zài děng bàndiǎn zhōng, yàoshi tā bulái, wǒ jiù děi zǒu. | I have been waiting for him three quarters of an hour. I'll wait another half hour, and if he doesn't come, I must leave. |
| 5. Nǐ tiāntiān shuǐjiào, shuǐ jǐge zhōngtóu? Wǒ shuǐ qíge zhōngtóu jiù qǐlai. | How many hours do you sleep each night? I sleep seven hours and then I get up. |
| 6. Aiyou, zěnmē bàn a? Wǒde háizi kǔle liǎngdiǎnduō zhōng le!
¹ See Lesson 18 Note 3, Exception | My, what'll I do? My child has been crying for more than two hours! |

III. USE OF CHÀ (LACK) AND GUÒ (EXCEED)

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Dào(le) shàngkè de shíhou le ma? | Is it time for class? |
| Hái méidào ne. | Not yet. |
| Hái zǎo ne. | It's early yet. |
| Hái chà bàndiǎn zhōng ne. | There's half an hour yet. |
| Dào le. | Yes, it is. |
| Yǐjīng dào le. | It's already time. |
| Zǎo dào le. | It was time long ago. |
| Gānggang dào shíhou. | It's just past time. |
| Guò le. | It's past time. |
| Zǎo guò shíhou le. | It's long past time. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 2. Dào(1e) liǎngdiǎn zhōng le
meiyou?
Méidào ne.
Hái méidào liǎngdiǎn ne.
Hái chà duōshao? (or jīfen?)
Hái chà shífen zhōng.
Yījīng guòle.
Zǎo guòle.
Guò duōshao le?
Guò(1e) yíqè zhōng le. | Is it two o'clock yet?

Not yet.
It isn't two yet.
How long before it will be two?
It lacks ten minutes.
It's already past two.
It's long past time.
How much past?
It's quarter past two. |
| 3. Hái chà duōshao qián?
Hái chà sānmao qián ne. | How much do I still owe you?
You owe me thirty cents yet. |
| 4. Wǒ chà yídiǎnr méikànjian nǐ. | I almost didn't see you. |
| 5. Guòle nàtiāo lù jiu dào xuéxiào
le. | The school is just past that road. |
| 6. Zài guò bàndiǎn zhōng wǒmen jiù
děi zǒule. | We must be going after another half
hour. |
| 7. Guò yíhuǐr zài tán ba! | Let's chat about this after a little
while! |
| 8. Guò liǎngtiān zài jiàn ba! | I'll be seeing you in a couple of
days! |

IV. 'JUST AS SOON AS' (EMPHATIC)

Patterns: (1-4) Tiān yíliàng(1e), wǒmen jiu qǐlái.

Just as soon as it was light, we got up.

(5-6) Wǒ yíkànjian xiǎoháir jiu xīhuan.

Whenever I see children I am happy.

(7-8) Tā yí dào(1e), wǒmen jiu yào chīfàn.

We will eat just as soon as he arrives.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Wǒ yītīngshuō wǒ mǔqīn bìngle,
wǒ lìkè jiu huíjiā le. | As soon as I heard that my mother
was ill, I returned home. |
| 2. Tā yīshuō xíng, wǒ jiu bǎ qián
dōu gěi tā le. | As soon as he said all right, I gave
him all the money. |
| 3. Wǒ bǎ qián yīgěi tā, tā jiu
zǒule. | He left as soon as I gave him the
money. |
| 4. Wǒ yíkànjian nǐ jiu zhīdao nǐ
yí dìng shì ge cōngmíng rén. | As soon as I saw you, I knew that
you definitely were an intelligent
man. |

L. 19

- | | |
|---|---|
| 5. Háizi yibunianshū, fùmǔ jiu búgaoxing. | Whenever children don't study, parents are unhappy. |
| 6. Rén yihējiǔ, jiu hěn róngyi bǎ shìqing wàngle. | Whenever people drink, they very easily forget things. |
| 7. Wǒmen yidàole Niǔyue, wǒ jiu yao xiān qu kàn yige péngyou. | Just as soon as we get to New York, I want to go see a friend. |
| 8. Wǒ yihuì shuō yidiǎnr Zhōngguo huà, jiu yào dào Zhōngguo qu. | As soon as I can speak a little Chinese, I expect to go to China. |

V. SUPPOSITION (WITH OR WITHOUT YAOSHI)

Pattern: (Yàoshi) wǒmen zǎo yidiǎnr qù, wǒmen jiu kéyi zǎo yidiǎnr huílai.

If we go a little earlier, we can get back a little earlier.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. (Yàoshi) nǐmen bumíngbai wǒde yìsi, wǒ jiu kéyi zài shuō yihuì. | If you don't get what I mean, I can say it once again. |
| 2. Lǎo Sān yàoshi zài zhèr, qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèjian xiǎo dōngxi gěi tā. | If Lao San is here, please give him this little thing. |
| 3. (Yàoshi) wǒ shuōde tài kuài, qǐng nǐ gǎosong wǒ, wǒ jiu kéyi shuō màn yidiǎnr. | If I speak too fast, please tell me and I can speak more slowly. |
| 4. Nǐ yàoshi méi shì, nǐ néng buneng bāng wǒ yidiǎnr máng? | If you don't have anything to do, could you help me a little? |
| 5. (Yàoshi) nǐ zhēn kànjian ta le, qǐng gǎosong wǒ shuō tā hǎo buhao. | If you have really seen him, please tell me if he is well. |
| 6. Tā (yàoshi) yǐjing zǒule, wǒmen jiu búbi dēng ta le. | We needn't wait any longer for him if he has already left. |
| 7. (Yàoshi) wǒ wàngle zěnme bàn? | What if I forgot? (or have forgotten?) |
| 8. (Yàoshi) nǐ zuótian méiqu kàn tā, nǐ zěnme zhīdao ta bìngle? | If you didn't go to see him yesterday, how do you know he's sick? |
| 9. Tā yàoshi hái shuìjiào ne, nǐ jiu bié jiào ta. | If he is still sleeping, don't call him. |
| 10. (Yàoshi) nǐ qù jiu hǎole. (Yàoshi) nǐ buqù, wǒ yě jiu buqùle. | If you go, all is well. If you don't go, then I won't be going either. |

FLUENCY DRILL

Buqùle.

Wǒ buqùle.

Wǒmen buqùle.

Wǒmen xiàwǔ buqùle.

Nǐ bulái, wǒmen xiàwǔ jiu buqùle.

Yàoshi nǐ bulái, wǒmen xiàwǔ jiu buqùle.

Yàoshi nǐ bulái, wǒmen xiàwǔ jiu bunéng qùle.

Yàoshi nǐ shàngwǔ bulái, wǒmen xiàwǔ jiu bunéng qùle.

Yàoshi nǐ shàngwǔ bunéng lái, wǒmen xiàwǔ jiu bunéng qùle.

Yàoshi nǐ míngtiān shàngwǔ bunéng lái, wǒmen xiàwǔ jiu bunéng qùle.

NOTES

1. TELLING TIME BY THE CLOCK: The three most common units of measurement of time by the clock are the measures -diǎn (hour), -kè (quarter hour), and -fēn (minute). These measures are preceded by appropriate number words, and followed by the noun zhōng (clock). See Vocabulary for examples.

Note that for even hours the full expression with zhōng is usually used, whereas in fractional expressions zhōng is usually dropped, as for example:

yìdiǎn zhōng one o'clock

yìdiǎn sānkè one forty-five

2. AMOUNTS OF TIME BY THE CLOCK: See the Vocabulary for list of whole and fractional units used in reckoning amounts of time by the clock. Since -diǎn zhōng denotes quantity as well as a point in time, the noun zhōngtóu (hour) is often used when sixty minutes of time is meant. The following three sentences express the same meaning:

Wǒ shuìle bàndiǎn zhōng de jiào jiu qǐlái.

Wǒ shuìle bāngè zhōngtóu de jiào jiu qǐlái.

Wǒ shuìle bàndiǎn zhōng de gōngfu jiu qǐlái.

I slept for half an hour and then got up.

3. LARGER UNITS OF TIME: Larger units of time, such as weeks, days, and divisions of the day, always precede the time by the clock:

jīntian xiàwǔ sīdiǎn zhōng four o'clock this afternoon

Shànglǐbaitiān zǎoshang bādiǎnbàn eight thirty last Sunday morning

4. INQUIRING THE TIME OF DAY: In asking and giving the time of day, as in asking prices (see Lesson 6, Note 6), no verb is necessary, although shì or yǒu is sometimes used. The particle of completion -le is sometimes attached to both question and reply:

Shénme shíhou (le)? Wǔdiǎnbàn What time is it? 5:30.
(le).

Xiànzài jīdiǎn zhōng (le)? What time is it now? Quarter past
Sāndiǎn yìkè (le). three.

5. SUPPOSITION: Supposition, as in English, is expressed by conditioning clauses, which (unlike English) always precede the main statements which they condition. Whereas 'if' is essential to the English clause, yàoshi is not necessarily to the Chinese. And vice versa, whereas 'then' is seldom used in English to introduce the subsequent statement, jiù in Chinese is often used (compare dependent clauses in Lesson 15):

(Yàoshi) tā bulái, wǒmen jiu If he doesn't come, we won't go.
buqùle.

Nǐ (yàoshi) bunéng chī ròu, You can eat fish if you can't eat
jiu kéyì chī yú. Suíbiàn. meat. Do as you wish.

6. 'JUST AS SOON AS': The Chinese equivalent of the more explicit expression 'just as soon as' is formed by affixing the numeral yī (one, once, used adverbially) to the verb of the dependent clause. The subsequent statement is usually introduced by the adverb jiù (then). (Compare dependent clauses in Lesson 15.):

Wǒ yìgēn tā shuōhuà, tā jiu Just as soon as I talked with him,
shéngqìle. he got angry.

Wǒ yìchī yú jiu bushūfu. Whenever I eat fish I don't feel
well.

Nǐ gēge yihuílai, wǒ jiu yào I want to see your elder brother as
jiàn ta. soon as he returns.

DÌÈRSHÍKÈ - LESSON 20

EXPERIENTIAL SUFFIX -GUO - RELATIVE TIME

My Indian Friend Visits China

Wǒ yǒu yige Yīndu péngyou. Wǒ
rènshi tā hǎojǐnián le. Yǒu
yinián tā dǎsuan dào Zhōngguo qù.
Tā xiěxìn gāosong wǒ tā yǐqián
méidào Zhōngguo qùguo.

I have an Indian friend. I have
known him for a good many years.
One year he planned on going to
China. He wrote me that he had
never been to China before.

Wǒde péngyou zài chuánshàng de
shíhou xuéle jǐju Zhōngguo rén
cháng yòng de huà. Xiàchuán
yǐqián tā yǐjing huì shuō: Nín
hǎo a, Xièxie, Zàijian. Xiàle
chuán yǐhòu tā yòu xuéle hǎoxiē.

While my Indian friend was aboard
the ship he learned a few common
expressions in Chinese. Before
he disembarked he could say:
How are you, Thanks, Goodbye.
After getting off he learned a lot
more.

Tā xiān zài Shànghǎi zhùle xie
rìzi, hòulai jiù zuò tèbiékuàichē
dào Nánjīng qùle. Nánjīng shì
Zhōngguo de Huáshengdùn. Dǎzhàng
yǐqián, chénglǐtòu de rén hěn
duō. Dǎzhàng de shíhou rén jiù
shǎole. Xiànzài bùdǎzhàngle, rén
dōu huílaile.

He first stayed several days in
Shanghai, after which he went by
Limited Express to Nanjing.
Nanjing is the Washington of China.
Before the war the city was well
populated. During the war the
people became fewer. Now that the
war is over, the people have all
returned.

Wǒ péngyou hěn xiǎng jiànjian jǐwèi
yǒumíng de Zhōngguo rén. Yīnwei
tā burènshi tāmen, buhǎo zìjǐ qu
jiàn tāmen, suǒyǐ tā zhǎole yige
péngyou gěi ta jièshào.

My friend was anxious to meet a few
of China's well-known people.
Since he did not know them, and
could not easily go himself to see
them, he found a friend to
introduce him.

Tā jiànle tāmen yǐhòu jiù huí
Yīndu qùle. Tā zǒude shíhou juéde
hěn gāoxíng. Yǒu jǐge péngyou
sòng ta shàngchuán, kāichuán de
shíhou duì ta shuō: Zàijiàn!
Yílùpíngān!

After he had visited them he
returned to India. As he left he
felt very happy. There were a
few friends to see him off, who
as the ship started said:
Goodbye, and a pleasant trip!

VOCABULARY

yǐqián	MA: previously; formerly	rènde, rènshi	V: know, recognize, be acquainted with
...yǐqián	MA: before..., ...ago		
yǐhòu	MA: (t)hereafter	juéde	V: feel that, consider
...yǐhòu	MA: after...	kàn	V: see, think, consider
běnlái	MA: originally	dǎsuan	V: plan to

qiántian(MA)N: day before yesterday	jièshao	V: introduce
hòutian (MA)N: day after tomorrow	xiào	V: laugh or smile
qián- N: front; former	xiào(hua)	V: laugh at
zìjǐ N: self, oneself	dǎzhàng	VO: fight, make war
xiàohua N: a joke	-guò	P: (experiential suffix to verbs)
lǎo A: always, keep on	a	P: (sentence suffix, see Note 4)
píngcháng SV: be ordinary, common	bùgǎndāng!	IE: you flatter me!
tèbié SV: be special, distinctive	yílùpíngan	IE: a pleasant journey

PATTERN SENTENCES

I. VERB SUFFIX -GUO

Patterns: (1-6) Nǐ chīguo Rìběn fàn meiyóu? Chīguo.

Have you ever eaten Japanese food? Yes, I have.

(7-8) Nǐ chīguo fàn le ma? Chīguole, xièxie.

Have you eaten? Yes, thank you.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Nǐ dào guo Zhōngguo meiyóu?
Méidào guo. Wǒ dǎsuan jīnnián qū. | Have you ever been to China? No, I haven't. I plan to go this year. |
| 2. Tā zài Zhōngguo zhù guo ma?
Zhù guo. | Has he ever lived in China. Yes, he has. |
| 3. Nǐ méi kànguó zhèběn shū ma?
Kànguó. Wǒ juéde zhèběn shū tài méiyìsi! | Haven't you ever read this book? Yes, I have, and I think it's too dull for anything! |
| 4. Tā jiā li méiqián, suóyì nàge háizi méiniànguó shū. | That child has never been to school since his family doesn't have the money. |
| 5. Nǐ jiànguó Lǐ Xiānsheng ma?
Méijiànguó, qǐng nǐ gěi jièshao jièshao. | Have you met Mr. Li before? No, I haven't, please introduce me. |
| 6. Měiguó gēn Zhōngguó dǎguó zhàng meiyóu? Méiyóu. | Have America and China ever fought? No, they haven't. |
| 7. Nǐ yòngguó kuàizi meiyóu? Wǒ yòngguó jīhuí(1e), kěshì háishi búdá huì yòng. | Have you ever used chopsticks? Yes, a few times, but I still don't know much about it. |

8. Nǐ qù kàn tāmen le meiyǒu? Have you been to see them? Yes,
Qùguole, kěshì jiāli méi rén. but there was nobody home.

II. GENERAL RELATIVE TIME

Pattern: Nǐ yǐqián zài nǎr niànshū?

Where have you studied previously?

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Nàge rén yǐqián hěn yuànyì zuòshì. Tā hòulai yǒuqián le, jiù buyuànyì zuòshìle. | That man previously was very willing to work. He later came into money and became unwilling. |
| 2. Yǐqián wǒmen zhùzài Niǔyuē. Hòulai wǒmen bāndao zhèr lái. | Before this we've been living in New York. Later we moved here. |
| 3. Nǐ cóngqián cháng shuō Zhōngguó huà. Nǐ zěnmé xiànzài bushuōle? | You formerly spoke Chinese a lot. Why don't you speak it now any more? |
| 4. Cóngqián wǒ bùrènde tā. Xiànzài wǒmen shì hǎo péngyou. | Formerly I didn't know him. Now we are good friends. |
| 5. Wǒ běnlai yě dǎsuan qù. Hòulai shìqing mángle, wǒ jiù bunéng qùle. | I had originally planned on going. Later because things piled up, I gave up going. |
| 6. Qiánjítian wǒ tèbié máng. Zhèliǎngtiān hǎo yidiǎnr le. | I was specially busy a few days ago. It is a little better the past couple of days. |
| 7. Guò liǎngtiān zài kàn ba. | Let's consider this again after a few days. |

III. SPECIFIC RELATIVE TIME

(a) ...yǐqián (before; ago)

Pattern: Wǒ chīfàn yǐqián cháng kàn bào.

I often read the paper before I eat.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Shuǐjiào yǐqián, wǒ yǒu shíhou kàn yidiǎnr shū. | I sometimes read a little before I go to sleep. |
| 2. Dao wàiguo qù yǐqián, wǒmen děi mǎi bushǎo dōngxi. | Before we go abroad, we must buy quite a few things. |
| 3. Nǐ shàngchuán yǐqián, bié wàngle xiěxìn gào song wǒ nǎtiān zǒu. | Don't forget to write me before you embark what day you are leaving. |
| 4. Tāmen bānjiā yǐqián zhùzài Tiānjīn(g). | They lived in Tianjin before they moved. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 5. Wǒmen sānge yuè yǐqián, yíjù Zhōngguó huà yě búhui shuō. Xiànzài nǐ kàn, wǒmen dōng duōshao le! | Three months ago we couldn't speak a word of Chinese. Now see how much we can understand! |
| 6. Tā shì bàndiǎn zhōng yǐqián huílaide. | He returned a half hour ago. |

(b) ...-de shíhou (while; when)

Pattern: Wǒ chífànde shíhou cháng gēn jiāli rén tánhuà.

I often chat with the family while eating.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Zhōngguó rén chífànde shíhou búda ài shuōhuà. | Chinese don't much like to talk while eating. |
| 2. Biérén chànggēde shíhou, búyào shuōhua. | We shouldn't talk while others are singing. |
| 3. Wǒ bàdiǎn zhōng shàngkède shíhou, hái juéde lèi. | I still feel tired when I go to class at eight o'clock. |
| 4. Nín qiántian lái kàn wǒ de shíhou, wǒ shàng Běijīng qùle. | When you came to see me day before yesterday, I had gone to Beijing. |
| 5. Wǒ shuō Zhōngguó huà de shíhou, qǐng nǐ bié xiào(hua) wǒ. | Please don't laugh at me when I speak Chinese. |

(c) ...yǐhòu (after)

Pattern: Wǒ chífàn yǐhòu jiù qù zuòshì.

After I have eaten I go to work.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Měitiān chī wǔfàn yǐhòu, wǒ děi shuì yíhuīr. Búshuì bùxíng! | I have to have a little nap each day after lunch. It won't do if I don't. |
| 2. Wǒmen bānjiā yǐhòu, qǐng nǐ dào wǒmen jiā lái chífàn. | After we have moved, please come to our home to have a meal. |
| 3. Wǒ zìjǐ míngbaile yǐhòu, jiù róngyì jiāo rén le. | After I understand it myself, then I can easily teach others. |
| 4. Tā zǒule yǐhòu, wǒmen jiù chífànle. | We ate after he left. |
| 5. Dōngxī mǎile yǐhòu, wǒmen jiù dào chēzhàn qùle. | After the things had been bought, we went to the station. |
| 6. Wǒ bàndiǎn zhōng yǐhòu jiù huílai. | I'll be back in half an hour. |
| 7. Bànnián yǐhòu wǒmen jiù yào dào Zhōngguó qùle. | We'll be going to China in six months. |

8. Zài guò sāngē yuè (yǐhòu),
wǒmende Zhōngguo huà yiding
jiu bucuòle!

After another three months, our
Chinese will certainly be quite
good!

FLUENCY DRILL

Niànshū.

Niàn Zhōngguo shū.

Niàn yidiǎnr Zhōngguo shū.

Děi niàn yidiǎnr Zhōngguo shū.

Wǒ děi niàn yidiǎnr Zhōngguo shū.

Wǒmen děi niàn yidiǎnr Zhōngguo shū.

Wǒmen děi xiān niàn yidiǎnr Zhōngguo shū.

Wǒmen qù yǐqián, děi xiān niàn yidiǎnr Zhōngguo shū.

Wǒmen dao Zhōngguo qù yǐqián, děi xiān niàn yidiǎnr Zhōngguo shū.

Wǒmen míngnián dao Zhōngguo qù yǐqián, děi xiān niàn yidiǎnr Zhōngguo shū.

Wǒmen míngnián méidao Zhōngguo qù yǐqián, děi xiān niàn yidiǎnr Zhōngguo shū.

NOTES

1. EXPERIENTIAL VERB SUFFIX -GUO: When it is desired to indicate that an action has or has not ever been experienced, the verb suffix -guo is used with both positive and negative forms of the verb:

Nín zuòguo fēijī meiyǒu?
Méizuòguo. Wǒ cháng xiǎng
zuò.

Have you ever been in a plane? No,
I never have. I often wish I
might.

Nín kànguò zhèběn shū ma?
Kànguò, yǒu yìsi jíle!

Have you read this book? Yes, and
it's most interesting!

The verb suffix -guo often indicates little more than what is indicated by -le. In this use it can be considered as an integral part of the verb, and the resulting compound behaves with respect to -le like any other verb:

Nǐ dao ta jiā qule ma?
Qùguole.

Did you go to his house? Yes, I
did.

Jīntian de bào nǐ kànle ma?
Kànguole. Méi shénme yàojīn
de shì.

Have you read today's paper. Yes.
There's nothing of importance.

2. GENERAL RELATIVE TIME: Taking the immediate present, or some point of reference as a pivot, general relative time is expressed by time words such as the following:

cóngqián	formerly
hòulai	afterwards, later on
yǐqián	(t)heretofore, previously
xiànzài	at present, now
yǐhòu	(t)hereafter, afterwards

These words are movable adverbs, and the sentences follow the time when pattern:

Yǐqián wǒ méichīguo Zhōngguo fàn. Yǐhòu wǒ yao cháng chí.	I have never eaten Chinese food before. I expect to eat it often after this.
---	--

3. SPECIFIC RELATIVE TIME: To be specific in time relationships, the time element, or a descriptive sentence, stands just before the time words yǐqián or yǐhòu, and a descriptive sentence before -de shíhou. The resulting expressions behave like movable adverbs:

Nín shàngchuán yǐqián kéyi gěi wǒ yige xìn, wǒ xiǎng sòngsong nín.	Before you embark let me know, as I want to see you off.
Shàngkè de shíhou bié shuō Yīngwén!	Don't talk English while class is in session!
Sānnián yǐqián wǒ búzai zhèr.	I wasn't here three years ago.
Bànnián yǐhòu tā jiu yao lái.	He'll be coming in six months.
Wǒ dào le Zhōngguo yǐhòu jiu gāoxìng.	I'll be happy when I get to China.

Note that the sentence: Wǒ chīfàn yǐqián kàn bào is often said: Wǒ méichīfàn yǐqián kàn bào. The same holds true for sentences 1-4 under Pattern III (a) above, where a descriptive sentence precedes yǐqián.

4. SENTENCE SUFFIX A: The particle a adds nothing in content to the word or sentence to which it is affixed, but it changes the mood of the speaker. One of the most common uses of a is in direct address as in:

Nǐ hǎo a! (How are you!), Lǎo Zhào a! (Oh, Zhao!)

DÌÈRSHÍYÍKÈ - LESSON 21

RESULTATIVE COMPOUND VERBS

A Strange Lad

Wǒ yǐqián zài Měiguó kànjianle
yige shíjísuì de nánháizi. Nàge
háizi zhēn qíguài!

Previously in America I saw a
teenage boy. That child is really
very strange.

Yǒu yitiān zǎoshang tā mǔqīn jiào
ta qǐlai, kěshi tā bùkěn qǐlai.
Tā duì mǔqīn shuō: "Ma, wǒ hái
děi shuì yihuīr, zuótian wǎnshang
méishuìhǎo."

One morning his mother called him
to get up, but he wouldn't get up.
He said to his mother: "Mother,
I've got to sleep a little longer,
I didn't get enough sleep last
night."

Tā qǐlaile yǐhòu, tā fùqīn jiào ta
xǐliǎn chīfàn. Háizi jiù shuō:
"Wǒ yidiǎnr yě buè, shénme yě
buxiǎng chí."

After he got up, his father told
him to wash up and eat. The child
said: "I'm not a bit hungry, I
don't want to eat anything."

Guò yige zhōngtòu, tā fùqīn jiào ta
shàngxué. Háizi shuō: "Bàba,
yǐhòu wǒ búshàngxuéle. Wǒ
xuébuliǎo shénme, wǒ tài bèn!"

After an hour, his father told him
to go to school. The boy said:
"Daddy, I'm not going to school
any more. I can't learn anything,
I'm too dumb!"

Yàoshi nǐ jiào ta shàngjiē, gěi nǐ
mǎi yidiǎnr dōngxì, tā lǎoshi
shuō nàge dōngxì zài zhèr
mǎibuzhǎo, suǒyì búyòng qùle.

If you ask him to go upstairs to
buy something for you, he always
says that that can't be bought
here, and so there's no use to
go.

Yàoshi nǐ jiào ta tì nǐ bàn yijiàn
shìqing, dièrtian wèn ta bànle
meiyòu, tā jiù shuō nàjian shìqing
hái méibànwán ne, yitiān bànbuwán.

If you tell him to do something for
you, and the next day ask him if
he has done it, he will say that
the job is not yet finished, and
that it can't be finished in a day.

Nàge háizi qíguài de dìfang tài
duō le, shuō yitiān yě shuōbuwán.
Kěshi nà búyào jīn, děng ta dàle
jiù hǎole!

The strange points of that boy are
too numerous to mention. You
couldn't exhaust them in a day's
time! But never mind, wait till
he grows up and he'll be all
right!

VOCABULARY

shān N: hill, mountain

lóutī N: stairs

yīshang N: clothes

è SV: be hungry

liǎn N: face (lit. or fig.)

kě SV: be thirsty

fázi N: way, method

bǎo SV: be satisfied (after
eating)

L. 21

bèn	SV: be stupid; clumsy	chuān	V: wear; put on (clothes)
qíguài	SV: be strange; queer	tuō	V: take off (clothes)
zāng	SV: be dirty	zhāi	V: take off (hat)
gānjing	SV: be clean	diū	V: lose, misplace
kěn	AV: be willing to	pà	V: be afraid of; fear that
xǐ	V: wash	kǒngpà	V: be afraid that; perhaps, probably
yùbei	V: prepare	diūliǎn	IE: lose face (publicly)
bàn	V: manage; carry out	méi(you) fázi	IE: there's no way out! it can't be helped!

A FEW OF THE MORE COMMON ENDINGS TO RESULTATIVE COMPOUND VERBS

- jiàn indicates perception of what is seen, heard, or smelled
- dǒng indicates understanding of what is seen, heard, or read
- dào indicates arrival at the goal of the action
- zháo indicates success in attaining object of the action
- hǎo indicates satisfactory completion of the action
- wán indicates end or completion of the action
- liǎo indicates capacity for doing something, or for carrying it through to completion
- lái indicates arrival
- qù indicates arrival there

EXAMPLES OF RESULTATIVE COMPOUNDS OF BOTH TYPES

(Actual)	Nǐ kànjianle ma?	Kànjianle.	Méikànjiàn.
	Did you see it?	Yes, I did.	No, I didn't.
(Potential)	Nǐ kàndejiàn ma? ¹	Kàndejiàn. ²	Kànbujiàn. ²
	Can you see it?	Yes, I can.	No, I can't.

¹Potential questions use both the simple type (kàndejiàn ma?), and the choice type (kàndejiàn kànbujiàn?)

²The main stress in both forms of the potential type falls on the last syllable (with the exception of xidegānjing).

	<u>THE POTENTIAL TYPE</u>	
(Positive)	(Negative)	(Other Verbs Taking These Endings)
1. tīngdejiàn	tīngbujàn	(kàn)
2. kàndedǒng	kànbudǒng	(tīng)
3. sòngdedào	sòngbudào	(zuò, bàn, zǒu, qīng, xiǎng)
4. mǎidezǎo	mǎibuzǎo	(zhǎo, jiàn, wèn, yòng, shuǐ)
5. bàndehǎo	bànbuhǎo	(zuò, bàn, xiě, xué, yùbei)
6. shuōdewán	shuōbuwán	(tán, xiě, xué, niàn, jiāo, chī, hē, zuò, bàn, mǎi, yòng, ná, bān, cháng)
7. nǎdeliǎo ³	nǎbuliǎo	(same as those under <u>wán</u> above)
8. huǐdelái	huǐbulái	(shàng, xià, jìn, chū, qī, guò)
9. shàngdeqù	shàngbuqù	(xià, huí, jìn, chū, guò)
10. bāndeshānglái	bānbushānglái	(ná, zǒu)
11. zǒudeshāngqù	zǒubushāngqù	(ná, bān)
12. nǎdexiǎolái	nǎbuxiǎolái	(bān, zǒu, tuō, zhāi)
13. chǐdexiǎoqù	chǐbuxiǎoqù	(hē, ná, bān, zǒu, fàng, zuò)
14. bāndejīnlái	bānbujīnlái	(ná, zǒu)
15. fàngdejīnqù	fàngbujīnqù	(ná, bān, zǒu)
16. xiǎngdechulái	xiǎngbuchulái	(ná, bān, zǒu, shuō)
17. zǒudechuqù	zǒubuchuqù	(ná, bān)
18. xiǎngdeqīlái	xiǎngbuqīlái	(ná, bān, zhàn, zuò)
19. mǎideqī ³	mǎibuqī	(chī, hē, chuān, dài, zhù, zuò)
20. kāidekāi	kāibukāi	
21. guāndeshàng	guānbushàng	(chuān, dài)
22. chǐdebǎo	chǐbubǎo	
23. xīdegānjīng	xībugānjīng	
24. kǎndeqī ³	kǎnbuqī	

³The endings -liǎo and -qī appear only in the potential type.

PATTERN SENTENCESI. USE OF RESULTATIVE COMPOUNDS

Pattern: Nàge shānshang yǒu liǎngge rén, nǐ kàndějiàn ma?
Wǒ kànbujiàn.

There are two people on that hill, can you see them?
No, I can't make them out.

1. Wàitou yǒu rén shuōhuà, nǐ tīngdejiàn ma? Tīngdejiàn. There are some people talking outside. Can you hear them? Yes, I can.
2. Zhèxie jǔzi nǐ kàndedǒng ma? Yǒude kàndedǒng, yǒude kànbudǒng. Can you understand these sentences that you are reading? Some I can, some I can't.
3. Tài wǎnle, jīntian kǒngpà sòngbudào. Míntian gěi nǐ sòngqu, hǎo buhǎo? It's too late, I'm afraid we can't get it there today. How about sending it there tomorrow?
4. Zhōngguo bǐ zài Měiguó mǎidezǎo mǎibuzǎo? Mǎidezǎo. Wǒ zài Nǚyuē gāng mǎile jǐge. Can you buy Chinese pens in America? Yes, you can. I just bought a few in New York.
5. Nàge shìqing bànhǎole ma? Wǒ bànbuhǎo. Qǐng nǐ zhǎo biéren tī nǐ bàn ba. Has that been put through? I can't do it. Better find some one else to do it for you.
6. Wǒ yǒu hǎoxie huà yào duì nǐ shuō, kǒngpà shuō yìtiān yě shuōbùwán! I have a great deal to say to you, we could talk a whole day and not finish talking!
7. Nǐ nàdeliǎo zhèxie dōngxī ma? Nàbuliǎo. Nǐn néng bunéng tī wǒ ná yìdiǎnr? Can you carry all these things? No, I can't. Could you take a few of them for me?
8. Wǒmen míngtiān huídelái huíbulái? Míngtiān yìdìng néng huílai. Can we get back tomorrow? We certainly can.
9. Zhège shān hěn gāo, wǒ pà nǐ shàngbuqù. Nǐ shàngqule yǐhòu, wǒ pà nǐ xiàbulái. This is a high mountain, I fear you won't make it. After you have climbed it, I fear you can't make it down.
10. Nàge zhuōzi liǎngge rén bānbushànglái ba? Bāndeshànglái. Two people can't move that table up here, can they? Yes, they can.
11. Zhège lóutí bùhǎozòu, kǒngpà nǐ zòubushàngqù. These stairs are not easy to climb. I fear you can't climb them.
12. Nàzhāng huàr nábuxiàláile. You can't get that picture down.
13. Wǒ jīntian bushūfu, dōngxī chībuxiàqù. I don't feel well today, so I can't eat anything (lit. get anything down).

14. Mén tài xiǎo, zhuōzi
bānbujinlái.
The door is too small so we can't
move the table inside.
15. Dōngxī tài dà, dìfang tài
xiǎo, fàngbujinqu.
The thing is too large and the
place too small, so we can't
place it in.
16. Nǐ yǒu fázi meiyǒu? Wǒ
xiǎngbuchū fázi lái.
Have you a way? I can't think of a
way.
17. Zhège mén zǒubuchūqù. Qǐng
nǐmēn zǒu nàge mén.
You can't go out this door. Please
go by that door.
18. Wǒ wàngle tā xīng shénme, wǒ
zěnme yě xiǎngbuqilái! Ōu,
wǒ xiǎngqǐláile, tā xīng
Chén!
I've forgotten his name, try as I
may, I can't recollect it!--Oh,
I have it, his name is Chen!
19. Zhège zhōng tài guì, wǒ
mǎibuqǐ.
This clock is too expensive, I can't
afford to buy it.
20. Nàge mén kāidekāi kāibukāi?
Mén yǐjīng kāikaile.
Can that door be opened? It has
already been opened.
21. Zhège chuānghu wǒ guānbushàng.
Qǐng nǐ bāng wǒ guānshàng.
I can't close this window. Please
help me close it.
22. Wàiguó fàn nǐn chīdebǎo ma?
Chīdebǎo.
Can you feel satisfied when you
eat foreign food? Yes, I can.
23. Wèishénme zhèjian yīshang wǒ
lǎo xībugānjīng?
Why is it that I can never wash
this garment clean?
24. Wǒ kànbuqǐ nàge rén! Ai, bié
kànbuqǐ rén!
I despise that man! Goodness, you
mustn't look down on people.

FLUENCY DRILL

Xībugānjīng.
Yīshang xībugānjīng.
Zhèjian yīshang xībugānjīng.
Wǒ zhèjian yīshang xībugānjīng.
Wǒ zhèjījian yīshang xībugānjīng.
Wǒmen zhèjījian yīshang xībugānjīng.
Wǒmen zhèjījian yīshang zāng, xībugānjīng.
Wǒmen zhèjījian yīshang zāngde lǐhai, xībugānjīng.
Wǒmen zhèjījian yīshang zāngde lǐhai, kǒngpà xībugānjīng.
Wǒmen zhèjījian yīshang zāngde lǐhai, kǒngpà bàntian xībugānjīng.
Wǒmen zhèjījian yīshang zāngde lǐhai, kǒngpà bàntian yě xībugānjīng.

NOTES

1. RESULTATIVE COMPOUND VERBS: Resultative verbs are compounds of two members, in which the first or root verb indicates the kind of action involved, while the second shows the result or extent of the action expressed by the first.

There are two types of resultative compounds: (a) ACTUAL, in which the result or goal has been actually attained, and (b) POTENTIAL, in which the result or extent of the action is conceived of as being possible or impossible of attainment. The potential type is formed by inserting between the first and second members -de- for the positive, and -bu- for the negative:

(a) Actual Type:

Nǐ kànjian tā le ba?	You saw him, I presume?
Kànjian tā le.	Yes, I did.
Nǐmen chīwánle meiyóu?	Have you finished eating?
Hái méichīwán ne.	Not yet.
Fàn yùbeihǎole ma?	Is the food ready?
Yùbeihǎole.	It's all ready.

(b) Potential Type:

Tā shuōde huà nǐ tīngdedǒng ma? Wǒ yìjù yě tīngbudǒng.	Do you understand what you hear him say? I don't understand a word of it.
Wǒmen míngtiān zǒudeliǎo ma? Yàoshi shìqīng bǎnwánle jiù zǒudeliǎo.	Can we get away from here tomorrow? If we get through with everything we can.
Nǐ shàngdeqù nàge shān ma? Búxíng, shàngbuqù.	Can you climb that mountain? No, I can't do it.

Note that a resultative compound verb does not necessarily have both actual and potential types. Compare, for example, those with the endings -liǎo and -qǐ which have only the potential types (zǒudeliǎo, able to leave; chīdeqǐ, can afford to eat).

Note also that objects follow a resultative verb, or stand in the transposed position:

Nǐ chīdeliǎo zhèxiē fàn ma?	Can you eat all this rice?
Zhèxiē fàn nǐ chīdeliǎo ma?	Can you eat all this rice?

Note again that not all compound verbs are resultative. For example, tīngshuō, jiěshào, rènshi, yùbei, míngbai, are not. The test for resultatives is whether the compound can be converted into the potential type or not.

DÌÈRSHÌÈRKÈ - LESSON 22

SIMILARITY AND COMPARISON

China and America

Zhōngguó bǐ měiguó dà, Zhōngguó rén yě bǐ měiguó rén duō.	China is bigger than America, and there are more Chinese than Americans, too.
Měiguó de shān hěn gāo, kěshì Zhōngguó de gèng gāo.	The mountains of America are high, but those of China are higher.
Zhōngguó de hé méiyǒu měiguó de name cháng.	China's rivers are not as long as America's.
Zhōngguó de tiānqì gēn měiguó de chàbuduō yìyàng.	The climate of China is about like that of America.
Zhōngguó yǒu bushǎo dà chéng, kěshì méiyǒu měiguó name duō.	There are quite a few big cities in China, but not so many as in America.
Shànghǎi de lóu buǎi, kěshì méiyǒu Niūyuē de name gāo. Shìjièshàng zuì gāo de lóu zài Niūyuē.	Shanghai's buildings are quite high, but they're not as high as New York's. The world's highest building is in New York.
Zhōngguó rén gēn měiguó rén chī de dōngxī bù yìyàng. Chīfàn de fázi yě bù yìyàng, kěshì chīfàn de shíhòu chàbuduō.	Chinese and Americans don't eat the same things. They don't eat the same way either, but the times they eat don't differ much.
Zhōngguó rén gēn měiguó rén hē de dōngxī yě bù yìyàng. Zhōngguó rén píngcháng hē chá. Měiguó rén zuì ài hē 'kāfēi'.	What Chinese and Americans drink is different, too. Chinese ordinarily drink tea. Americans love most to drink coffee.
Zhōngguó huà fēicháng róngyì shuō, bǐ biéde huà dōu róngyì shuō, kěshì Zhōngguó zì tèbié nánxiě.	Chinese is extraordinarily easy to speak, easier than all other languages. But Chinese characters are especially difficult to write.
Zhōngguó de guógē zhēn hǎotīng, gēn měiguó de yìyàng hǎotīng. Kěshì měiguó de guógē bǐ Zhōngguó de nánchàng.	The national anthem of China is really pretty, just as pretty as America's. But the American national anthem is harder to sing.

VOCABULARY

tiānqì	N: weather, climate	fāngbian	SV: be convenient
hé	N: river	cháng	SV: be long
shìjiè (shang)	N: the world	duǎn	SV: be short (opp. cháng)

yàngzi	N: style, appearance; sample	lěng	SV: be cold
suǒyǒude	N: all	rè	SV: be hot
-yàng	M: kind, sort, way	pàng	SV: be fat (of persons)
-tiáo	M: (measure for rivers, roads, fish, etc.)	shòu	SV: be thin (opp. pàng)
zhè(me), zèn(me)	A: in this way, to this degree, so	ǎi	SV: be short (opp. gāo)
nà(me)	A: in that way, to that degree, so	lìhai	SV: be fierce, strong, severe
gèng	A: still more, even	yi-yàng	SV: be the same, alike, similar
yi-yàng	A: equally, similarly	bǐ	CV: compared with; than
fēicháng	A: unusually	yǒu	CV: be as much as; be as SV: as
		zěnmeyàng	IE: how about...?; how's everything?

PATTERN SENTENCES

I. DESCRIPTION (ONE LONG TABLE)

Pattern: Zhège zhuōzi hěn cháng. This is a very long table.

Zhège zhuōzi cháng bucháng. Cháng.	Is this table long. Yes, it is.
Zhège zhuōzi hěn cháng.	This table is quite long.
Zhège zhuōzi chángde hěn.	This table is very long.
Zhège zhuōzi fēicháng cháng.	This table is unusually long.
Zhège zhuōzi tèbié cháng.	This table is specially long.
Zhège zhuōzi zhēn cháng!	This table certainly is long!
Zhège zhuōzi chángde lìhai!	This table is terribly long!
Zhège zhuōzi chángjíle!	This table is extremely long!
Zhège zhuōzi tài cháng!	This table is too long!

II. SIMILARITY (TWO TABLES OF EQUAL LENGTH)

Patterns: Zhège zhuōzi gēn nàge yí-yàng cháng.

This table is the same length as that one.

Zhège zhuōzi yǒu nàge name cháng.

This table is as long as that one.

Zhège zhuōzi gēn nàge yíyang cháng
ma? Yíyang cháng. Zhèliǎngge
zhuōzi dōu yíyang cháng.

Is this table the same length as
that one? Yes, it is. These two
tables are both the same length.

Zhège zhuōzi yǒu nàge zhuōzi name
cháng ma? Yǒu. Yǒu wǒ jiāli nàge
zhuōzi name cháng ma? Yǒu.

Is this table as long as that one?
Yes. Is it as long as the one in
my home? Yes.

III. DISSIMILARITY AND COMPARISON

(TWO TABLES, ONE LONG AND ONE SHORT)

Patterns: Zhège zhuōzi gēn nàge bù yíyàng cháng.

This table is not the same length as that one.

Zhège zhuōzi bǐ nàge cháng.

This table is longer than that one.

Nàge zhuōzi méi(you) zhège zhuōzi (zěnmè, zhème, or name)
cháng.

That table is not as long as this table.

Zhège zhuōzi gēn nàge bù yíyàng
cháng ba? Bùyíyàng cháng.
Zhèliǎngge zhuōzi bù yíyàng cháng.

This table is not the same length
as that one, is it? No, it isn't.
These two tables are not of equal
length.

Zhèliǎngge zhuōzi, nàge cháng?
Zhège cháng. Zhège zhuōzi bǐ
nàge cháng.

Which is the longer of these two
tables? This is the longer. It's
longer than that one.

Nàge zhuōzi yǒu zhège zhème cháng
ma? Méiyóu. Nàge zhuōzi méiyóu
zhège zhème cháng.

Is that table as long as this one?
No, it isn't. That table is not
as long as this one.

IV. DEGREES OF COMPARISON WITH ADVERBS GENG AND ZUI

(THREE TABLES OF DIFFERENT LENGTHS)

Patterns: Tóuyíge zhuōzi hěn cháng.

The first table is quite long.

Dièrge zhuōzi (bǐ tóuyíge) gèng (or hái) cháng.

The second table is even longer (than the first).

Disānge zhuōzi zui cháng, bǐ nà liǎngge dōu cháng.

The third table is the longest, longer than the other two

Zhè sānge zhuōzi dōu yíyang cháng ma? Búdōu yiyàng cháng.

Are these three tables all the same length? No they're not.

Nǎge zui cháng? Disānge zhuōzi zui cháng.

Which is the longest? The third table is the longest.

Nǎge zui duǎn? Diyíge zhuōzi zui duǎn.

Which is the shortest? The first table is the shortest.

Dièrge zhuōzi zěnmeyàng? Dièrge zhuōzi hěn cháng, kěshi méiyou disānge name cháng. Disānge zhuōzi chángjile, bǐ nà liǎngge dōu cháng. Wǒ xiǎng shìjièshang suǒyǒude zhuōzi dōu méiyou disānge zhuōzi name cháng. Nǐ shuō zěnmeyàng?

What about the second table? It is very long, but it isn't as long as the third. The third table is extremely long, longer than the other two. I think that none of the tables in the world are as long as the third table. What do you say?

FOUR MEN DESCRIBED AND COMPARED

Wǒ rèn de rén lǐtōu yǒu sìge rén: yíge xìng Zhāng, yíge xìng Wáng, yíge xìng Lǐ, yíge xìng Zhào.

Among the people I know there are four men: one is named Zhang, one Wang, one Li, and one Zhao.

Lǎo Zhāng gēn Lǎo Wáng yíyang gāo, yíyang pàng.

The two persons Zhang and Wang are the same height and build.

Lǎo Lǐ zui ǎi, bǐ tāmen dōu ǎi. Tā yě zui pàng, bǐ tāmen dōu pàng.

Li is the shortest, shorter than all of them. He is the stoutest too, stouter than all the others.

Lǎo Zhào zui gāo, bǐ tāmen sānge rén dōu gāo. Tā yě zui shòu, bǐ tāmen dōu shòu.

Zhao is the tallest, taller than the other three. He is the thinnest too, thinner than all the rest.

Lǎo Lǐ pàngjile! Tāmen dōu méiyou tā name pàng. Tā xiǎode shíhou yě hěn pàng. Wǒ xiǎng tā nàme pàng, zǒulù yíding hěn bufāngbian!

Li is extremely fat! None of them is as fat as he. He was fat when he was small. I think walking must surely be difficult when one is so fat!

Lǎo Zhào gāode lǐhai! Wǒ jué de tā tài gāo. Tā yě tài shòu. Kěshi kàn rén buyīngdāng kàn tāmen gāo bugao, pàng bupàng, yīngdāng kàn tāmen bāngzhu biéren bupāngzhu biéren, shì hǎo rén búshì hǎo rén.

Zhao is terribly tall! I think he is too tall. He is too thin, too. But in judging people one shouldn't look to see if they are tall or not, stout or not. One should consider if they are out to help people or not, if they are good people or not.

MORE SENTENCES ILLUSTRATING SIMILARITY AND COMPARISON

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Liú Xiānsheng gēn tā tàitai yíyang gāo ma? Yíyang gāo. | Are Mr. and Mrs. Liu the same height? Yes, they are. |
| 2. Nán hái zi bùgēn nǚ hái zi yíyang cōngmíng ba? Chābuduō. | Boys and girls are not equally intelligent, are they? Just about. |
| 3. Wǒde yìsi gēn nǐde yíyàng. | My idea is the same as yours. |
| 4. Zhègē gēr méi nàgē hǎochàng. Nàgē gēr hǎochàngde hěn. | This song is not as easy to sing as that one which is very easy to sing. |
| 5. Tā méi nǐ zuòfàn zuòde hǎo. Nǐ zuò de fàn zhēn hǎochǐ! | He doesn't cook as well as you do. The food you cook is delicious! |
| 6. Dao Niǔyuē qù, zuò huǒchēde méiyóu zuò qìchēde duō. Zuò qìchēde zhēn bushǎo! | In going to New York, not as many people go by train as by car. Really quite a few go by car! |
| 7. Huǒchē yǒu fēijī name kuài ma? Méiyóu. Fēijī bǐ shénme dōu kuài. | Are trains as fast as airplanes? No, planes are faster than anything else. |
| 8. Tā xué Zhōngguó huà bǐ tā tàitai xuéde kuài. Tā tàitai xuéde fēicháng màn. | He is learning Chinese faster than his wife. His wife is learning it unusually slowly. |
| 9. Zhèyang de bǐ bǐ nàyangde piányi. | This kind of pen is cheaper than that kind. |
| 10. Dao Yīngguó qù, zuò fēijī bǐ zuò chuán shūfu. | In going to England, it is more comfortable to go by plane than by boat. |
| 11. Nàyang de biǎo hěn guì, kěshi zhèyangde gèng (or hǎi) guì. | That kind of watch is quite expensive, but this kind is even more expensive. |
| 12. Nǐmen jǐge rén, nǎge zuòfàn zuòde zuì hǎo? | Which one of you cooks the best food? |
| 13. Jīntian bǐ zuótiān rè. | Today is hotter than yesterday. |
| 14. Qùnián méiyóu jīnnián lěng. | It wasn't as cold last year as it is this. |

FLUENCY DRILL

- Yiyàng, kěshi piányi.
 Gēn nīde yiyàng, kěshi piányi.
 Wōde gēn nīde yiyàng, kěshi piányi.
 Wōde biǎo gēn nīde yiyàng, kěshi piányi.
 Wǒ mǎide biǎo gēn nīde yiyàng, kěshi piányi.
 Wǒ mǎide biǎo gēn nī mǎide yiyàng, kěshi piányi.
 Wǒ mǎide zhège biǎo gēn nī mǎide yiyàng, kěshi piányi.
 Wǒ mǎide zhège biǎo gēn nī mǎide nàge yiyàng, kěshi piányi.
 Wǒ mǎide zhège biǎo gēn nī mǎide nàge yiyàng, kěshi bǐ nīde piányi.
 Wǒ mǎide zhège biǎo gēn nī mǎide nàge yiyàng, kěshi bǐ nī mǎide piányi.

NOTES

1. SIMILARITY AND DISSIMILARITY: To indicate similarity and dissimilarity between two or more persons or things, the co-verb pattern with gēn (with; and), and the stative verb yiyàng (be similar, alike) in its positive or negative form, are used:

Zhège gēn nàge yiyàng. This is the same as that.

Zhōng gēn biǎo bù yiyàng. Clocks and watches are different.

In refuting a statement expressing similarity, the negative particle bù- is prefixed to the entire expression:

Zhège bùgēn nàge yiyàng. This is not the same as that.

To indicate in what particular respect the two are similar or different, an appropriate SV follows yiyàng, which later then functions adverbially:

Zhège gēn nàge yiyàng dà. This is the same size as that.

Zhège bùgēn nàge yiyàng cháng. This is not the same length as that.

Zhōng gēn biǎo bù yiyàng guǐ. Clocks and watches are not the same price.

Another way to approach similarity and dissimilarity is with the verb yǒu (be as much as) and zhème or nàme (so):

Zhège yǒu nàge (name) dà. This is as big as that.

Zhège méiyǒu nàge (name) dà. This is not as big as that.

Note that the adverb zhème (or zěme) and nàme are often omitted.

2. COMPARISON WITH CO-VERB BI: To express comparison between persons or things, or groups of the same, the co-verb pattern with bi (in comparison with), and an appropriate SV, are used:

Zhège bǐ nàge dà.

This is bigger than that.

Zhège bùbǐ nàge hǎotīng.

This is not prettier sounding than that.

Note that in comparisons with bi, the positive form of stative verbs is usually used. For example, one says: Zhège qìchē bǐ nàge guì, not Zhège qìchē bǐ nàge buguì.

Note also that bi is used when both of the objects to be compared are expressed. When that with which something is being compared is clear from the context, the simpler form of comparison introduced in Lesson 4 is sufficient:

Zhè liǎngge shān, nǎge gāo.

Which of these two hills is higher?

Zhège shān gāo (for Zhège shān bǐ nàge gāo.).

This one is higher (than that one).

3. DEGREES OF COMPARISONS WITH ADVERBS GENG AND ZUI: When it is desired to state that a person or thing is larger, for instance, than one which is already regarded as large, the adverb gèng (even more), or hái (still) is used:

Zhèr de tiānqì hǎn rè, kěshi nàrde (bǐ zhèrde) gèng (or hái) rè.

The weather here is hot, but there it is even hotter (than here).

The adverb zui (most, -est) before SVs indicates the superlative degree:

Tāmen sānwei xiānsheng, nǎwei de Yīngwén zuì hǎo?

Of the three teachers, whose English is the best?

Zhāng Xiānshengde zuì hǎo.

Mr. Zhang's is the best.

DÌÈRSHÍSĀNKÈ - LESSON 23

SEPARATION AND DISTANCE - DEGREES OF COMPARISON

Three Routes To China

- A: Wǒ xiǎng xiàyuè dào Zhōngguó,
Zhōngguó lí Měiguó yǒu duō yuǎn?
I'm thinking of going to China next
month. How far is China from
America?
- B: Kàn nǐ zǒu nàtiào lù.
It depends on which route you take.
- A: Zuì jǐnde lù shì nàtiào lù?
Which is the shortest route?
- B: Zuì jǐnde lù shì jīngguó Běijī.
The nearest route is via the North
Pole.
- A: Nàtiào lù zěnmē zǒu?
How do you travel by that route?
- B: Cóng Niǔyuē zuò fēijī, yìzhí
wǎng běi fēi, jīngguó Jiānàdà
dào Běijī. Cóng Běijī, zài
wǎng nán fēi, jīngguó Èguó de
dōngbù jiù dào Zhōngguó le.
From New York you fly by plane
straight north, across Canada to
the North Pole. From the North
Pole you fly south, cross the
eastern part of Russia and you
reach China.
- A: Zhètiào lù yǒu duōshǎo yīnglǐ?
What is the length of this route?
- B: Yǒu qīqiānduō yīnglǐ.
More than seven thousand miles.
- A: Dao Zhōngguó méiyǒu bǐ zhètiào
gèng jǐnde lù ma?
Isn't there a shorter route to
China than this one?
- B: Méiyǒu. Jīngguó Ōuzhōu yǒu
yítiao lù, kěshì nàtiào bǐ
zhètiào yuǎn yìdiǎnr.
No. There is a way through Europe,
but that route is a little longer
than this one.
- A: Nàtiào lù zěnmē zǒu?
How do you go by that route?
- B: Yao wǎng dōng qu, zuò chuán dào
Déguó. Zài zuò huǒchē,
jīngguó Mòsikē, búdao liǎngge
lǐbài jiù kényi dào Nánjīng.
You must go east by boat to Germany.
Then you go by train, through
Moscow, and in less than two weeks
you can reach Nanjing.
- A: Zhètiào lù bǐ nàtiào yuǎn
duōshǎo?
How much longer is this route?
- B: Yuǎn liǎngqiānduō yīnglǐ.
It's 2000 some miles longer.
- A: Wǎng xī qù dàibuliǎo Zhōngguó
ma?
Can't you reach China by going
west?
- B: Dàodelipà, kěshì lù gèng yuǎnle.
Yào shì zǒu zhètiào lù, děi xiān
zuò huǒchē dào Jiùjīnshān, zài
zuò chuán, guò Tàipíngyáng dào
Shànghǎi. Zhètiào lù zuì
cháng zǒu.
You can, but it is still longer. If
you travel this route, you must
first go by train to San Francisco,
then by boat across the Pacific
to Shanghai. This is the most
commonly traveled route.

A: Fèixīn, fèixīn! I'm sorry to have troubled you!
 B: Méi shénme! It wasn't any trouble!

VOCABULARY

-biānr	M: -side, border; part	cái	A: just; merely
-bù	M: section, part	yìzhí	A: straight on, direct
-lǐ(lǐ)	M: a Chinese li (1/3 mile)	yuǎn	SV: be far
-yīnglǐ(lǐ)	M: an English mile	jìn	SV: be near
-chǐ	M: a Chinese foot (N: ruler)	dī	SV: be low
hǎi	N: sea	lǐ	CV: from (be separated or distant from)
dōng	N: east	wàng	CV: towards (in direction of)
nán	N: south	jīngguo	V: pass through or by, via
xī	N: west	zōu	V: go by way of; go (of cars, watches, etc.)
běi	N: north	líkai	V: leave (a place)
zuǒ	N: left	fēi	V: fly
yòu	N: right	kàn	V: it depends on
suǐshu	N: age (year count)	fèixīn	IE: I have put you to much trouble!
pángbiānr	N: the side of, flank		
lù	N: route		
duó(me)	A: how SV?, to what degree; oh, how SV!		

PATTERN SENTENCESI. DESCRIPTION OF A PARTICULAR DISTANCE

Pattern: Nǐ jiā lí xuéxiào yuǎn buyuǎn? Buyuǎn.

Is your home far from the school? No, it isn't.

Wǒ jiā lí xuéxiào hěn jìn.	My home is quite near to the school.
lí xuéxiào jīnde hěn.	very near to the school.
lí xuéxiào buyuǎn.	not far from the school.
lí xuéxiào bùhěn yuǎn.	not so far from the school.
lí xuéxiào bútai yuǎn.	not too far from school.

Tā jiā lí xuéxiào yuǎn buyuǎn?	Yuǎn.	Is his home far from school.	Yes.
lí xuéxiào hěn yuǎn.		It is quite far from school.	
lí xuéxiào yuǎnde hěn.		very far from school.	
lí xuéxiào fēicháng yuǎn.		unusually far from school.	
lí xuéxiào tèbié yuǎn.		specially far from school.	
lí xuéxiào zhēn yuǎn!		really far from school!	
lí xuéxiào yuǎnde lǐhai!		terribly far from school!	
lí xuéxiào yuǎnjíle!		extremely far from school!	
lí xuéxiào tài yuǎn!		too far from school!	

II. COMPARISON OF DISTANCES AND DEGREES OF COMPARISON

Patterns: Wǒ jiā (lí xuéxiào) bǐ nǐ jiā lí xuéxiào jìn.

My home is nearer to the school than yours.

Jìn duōshao? Jìnduōle! Jìn hǎojiǐ lǚ.

How much nearer? Very much nearer. Quite a few 'li' nearer.

Nǐ jiā (lí xuéxiào) gēn wǒ jiā lí xuéxiào bù yíyàng yuǎn ba?	Your home and mine are not the same distance from the school, are they?
Bù yíyàng yuǎn. Shéi jiā lí xuéxiào yuǎn? Nǐ jiā yuǎn.	No, they're not. Whose home is farther from the school? Yours.

Nǐ jiā (lí xuéxiào) bǐ wǒ jiā lí xuéxiào yuǎn yídiǎnr.	Your home is a little farther from the school than my home.
lí xuéxiào yuǎn hǎoxiē.	a good deal farther.
lí xuéxiào yuǎnde duō.	much farther.
lí xuéxiào yuǎnduōle!	very much farther!
lí xuéxiào yuǎnde duōle!	very much farther!

Wǒ jiā (lí xuéxiào) méiyǒu nǐ jiā lí xuéxiào name yuǎn. Wǒ juéde nǐ jiā lí xuéxiào tài yuǎn! Nǐ juéde zěnmeyàng?	My home is not as far from the school as your home is. I feel that your home is too far from the school. What do you think?
--	---

Chēzhàn lí xuéxiào yuǎn buyuǎn? Nà kě gèng yuǎnle! Bǐ wǒmen liǎngjiā lí xuéxiào yuǎnde duō! Suǒyǐ wǒ bucháng zuò huǒchē!	Is the station far from the school? That's even farther! It's farther from school than our two homes! So I seldom go by train.
--	--

III. MEASURING DISTANCE

Pattern: Nǐ jiā lí xuéxiào yǒu duōme yuǎn. Yǒu bàn lǚ lǚ.

How far is your home from the school? Half a li.

Wǒ jiā lí xuéxiào yǒu bàn lǚ lǚ. Nǐ jiā lí xuéxiào yǒu duō yuǎn? Yǒu sān lǚ lǚ. Nà bǐ wǒ jiā lí xuéxiào yuǎn èr lǚ lǚ, duì buduì?	My home is half a li from school. How far is your home from school? Three li. That's two li farther from the school than my home. Is that right?
---	--

Chēzhàn lí xuéxiào yǒu jǐ lǚ lǚ? Yǒu liù yǐng lǚ méiyǒu? Chābuduō.	How far is the station from the school. Is it six miles? Just about.
--	--

IV. MEASURING DISTANCE, LENGTH, AGE, ETC.

1. Jiùjinshān lí Niǔyuē yǒu duōshao yínglǐ? Yǒu sānqiānduo yínglǐ. How many miles is it from San Francisco to New York. It is 3000 and more miles.
2. Shànghǎi lí Jiùjinshān duōme yuǎn? Bǐ Jiùjinshān lí Niǔyuē yuǎn èrqiān yínglǐ. How far is it from Shanghai to San Francisco? It is 2,000 miles farther than from San Francisco to New York.
3. Zhège zhuōzi jǐchǐ cháng? Sānchībǎn. Bǐ nàbianr nage zhuōzi cháng duōshao? Cháng yìchǐ. How long is this table? Three and a half feet. How much longer than that one? One foot.
4. Měiguó zuì cháng de hé yǒu duó cháng? Yǒu yìqiān yínglǐ cháng ma? Wǒ bùzhīdào, nǐ kéyì wèn tā ba! How long is America's longest river? Is it 1,000 miles long? I don't know, ask him!
5. Nǐ nage qìchē yíge zhōngtóu néng zǒu duōshao yínglǐ? Néng zǒu bāshí yínglǐ. How many miles an hour can your car go? It can go eighty miles an hour.
6. Nǐ kàn nàge rén duōme gāo a! Tā yǒu bāchǐ gāo ba? See how tall that man is! He is eight feet tall, isn't he?
7. Nǐ jǐsuì le? Nǐ gēge jǐsuì le? Nǐ fùqīn duó dà suǐshùle? Tā yǒu sìshísuì meiyǒu? How old are you? How old is your elder brother? How old is your father? Is he forty years old yet?
8. Nín yǒu duó dà suǐshù? Wǒ wúshíduō le! How old are you? I'm more than fifty already.
9. Zhètiao lù bǐ nàtiao yuǎn duōshao? Yuǎn hǎojǐshíli lù. Nàtiao lù jìnduōle! How much farther is this road than that one? Many, many 'li'. That road is much nearer!
10. Nàge shān yǒu duó gāo? Yǒu yìwànchǐ gāo ma? Duō! Hái yǒu gèng gāode shān ma? Yǒu. Shìjièshàng zuì gāode shān zài Yìndù de běibianr, yǒu sānwànchǐ gāo. How high is that mountain? Is it 10,000 feet high? It's more! Are there even higher mountains? Yes, there are. The world's highest mountain is north of India, it's 30,000 feet high.

V. MEASURES -BIANR AND -BU COMPARED

1. Niǔyuē zài Měiguó de dōngbù (or dōngbianr). Jiùjinshān zài xībù (or xībianr). New York is in the eastern part of America. San Francisco is in the western part.
2. Běijīng zài Zhōngguó de běibù (or běibianr), Nánjīng zài dōngbù (or dōngbianr), Hánkǒu zài Zhōngguó de zhōngbù. Beijing is in the north of China, Nanjing is in the east, and Hankou is in the middle of China.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 3. Dōngsānshěng zài Zhōngguó de dōngběibù (or dōngběibianr). | Manchuria (East Three Provinces) is in Northeast China. |
| 4. Wǒ shì cái cóng Jiānàdà zhōngbù láide, kěshì wǒ búshì Jiānàdà zhōngbù de rén. | I just came from the central part of Canada, but I am not a Central Canadian. |
| 5. Měiguó dōngbianr gēn xībianr dōu yǒu hǎi: dōngbianr de hǎi jiào Dàxíyáng, xībianr de hǎi Tàipíngyáng. | There is water both east and west of America: on the east it is called the Atlantic (Great West Ocean), on the west it is the Pacific. |
| 6. Wǒmen nǎbianr yǒu yíge hěn dàde lǚguǎn. Búzhīdào nǐmen zhèbianr yǒu dà lǚguǎn meiyǒu? | We have a big hotel over where we are. I wonder if you have big hotels over in your section? |
| 7. Qiánbianr nǎge pùzi shì wǒmen kāide. Pángbiānr nǎge búshì. | The store up in front is ours. The one to the side of it isn't ours. |
| 8. Qǐng lǐbianr zuòzuò! | Come in and sit down. |
| 9. Qǐng nǐ zhànzài zuǒbianr, nǐ tàitai zhànzài yòubianr, nǐmen liǎngge hái'zi kéyì zhànzài liǎngbiānr. | Will you please stand on the left, your wife on the right, and your two children on the two sides. |
| 10. Hái'zi zuì xǐhuan zài hǎibiānshàng wánr. | Children love most to play on the seashore. |

FLUENCY DRILL

Yuǎn.

Lí chēzhàn yuǎn.

Wǒ lí chēzhàn yuǎn.

Wǒmen jiā lí chēzhàn yuǎn.

Wǒmen jiā lí chēzhàn yuǎn.

Wǒmen jiā lí chēzhàn, bǐ nǐmen yuǎn.

Wǒmen jiā lí chēzhàn, bǐ nǐmen jiā yuǎn.

Wǒmen jiā lí chēzhàn, bǐ nǐmen jiā lí chēzhàn yuǎn.

Wǒmen jiā lí chēzhàn, bǐ nǐmen jiā lí chēzhàn yuǎnduōle!

Nǐmen jiā lí chēzhàn, bǐ wǒmen jiā lí chēzhàn yuǎn duōshǎo?

Wǒmen jiā lí chēzhàn, bǐ nǐmen jiā lí chēzhàn yuǎn sān yínglǐ!

NOTES

1. DISTANCE WITH CO-VERB LI: To indicate the distance between two points, the co-verb pattern with lǐ (be distant from) is used, together with the stative verb yuǎn (be far) or jìn (be near), as the case may be:

Měiguó lǐ Zhōngguó hěn yuǎn. America is quite far from China.

Wǒ jiā lǐ chēzhàn jìn de hěn. My home is very near the station.

The extent of separation is indicated by appropriate adverbs standing just before the stative verb, or by endings attached to the stative verbs such as -de hěn, -de lǐhai, and -jīle. (See Pattern Sentences I above for list.)

2. COMPARING DISTANCES: In describing the relation between distances, whether they are similar or dissimilar, the co-verb pattern holds, but phrases replace the simple nouns. Compare the following pairs of sentences:

(a) Wǒ gēn tā yíyàng gāo. Wǒ jiā (lǐ xuéxiào) gēn tā jiā lǐ xuéxiào yíyàng yuǎn. I am the same height as he is. My home is the same distance from school as his home.

(b) Wǒ yǒu tā name gāo. Wǒ jiā (lǐ xuéxiào) yǒu tā jiā name yuǎn. I am as tall as he. My home is as far from the school as his.

(c) Nǐ bǐ wǒ gāo. Nǐ jiā (lǐ xuéxiào) bǐ wǒ jiā lǐ xuéxiào yuǎn. Wǒ jiā jìn. You are taller than I am. Your home is farther from school than my home is. My home is nearer.

(d) Wǒ méiyǒu nǐ name gāo. Wǒ jiā (lǐ xuéxiào) méiyǒu nǐ jiā lǐ xuéxiào name yuǎn. Nǐ jiā yuǎn. I'm not as tall as you. My home is not as far from school as your home is. Your home is farther.

Note the phrase in the parentheses above. This first CV-N phrase is often omitted when distances between two points and a common third point are compared. In the case of comparisons of distances between two points and two different points, the full form with both CV-N phrases is necessarily used. Compare the following sentences:

(a) Rìběn lǐ Zhōngguó, gēn Yīngguó lǐ Fǎguó chàbuduo yíyàng yuǎn. Japan is about as far from China as England is from France.

(b) Tiānjīng lǐ Nánjīng, méiyǒu Shànghǎi lǐ Nánjīng name yuǎn. It isn't as far from Tianjing to Beijing, as it is from Shanghai to Nanjing.

(c) Chēzhàn lǐ wǒ jiā, bǐ wǒ jiā lǐ nǐ jiā yuǎn. It is farther from the station to my home, than it is from my home to your home.

3. USE OF YOU IN MEASUREMENT: It was seen in the last lesson (see note 1) that (méi)yǒu and zhème or zènme, together with appropriate stative verbs, are used in measuring relative distances. For measuring particular distances, heights, ages, etc., (yǒu) and duó(me) or (duō(me), how? to what degree or extent?) are used with stative verbs in making inquiries, and (yǒu) and appropriate number-measure phrases are used with stative verbs in making replies:

Nǐ yǒu duóme gāo? Wǒ yǒu liùchǐ gāo.	How tall are you? I am six feet tall.
Xiǎoháir duó dà le? Gānggāng yísuǐ le.	How old is the child. Just a year old.
Cóng zhèr dào Niǔyuē yǒu duó yuǎn? Yǒu duōshao yīnglǐ?	How far is it from here to New York? How many miles?
Nín duó dà suǐshu le? Wǒ sìshíduō le!	How old are you? (to adult) I'm over forty!
Zhuōzi yǒu duóme cháng? Yǒu jǐchǐ cháng?	How long is the table? How many feet long?

4. DEGREES OF COMPARISON: In Lesson 22 degrees of comparison between three or more persons or things with gèng and zuǐ was presented (see Note 3). In this lesson degrees of comparison of particular distances, etc. are shown to be indicated by elements such as yidiǎnr (a little), -de duō (much), etc., affixed to the stative verb (see Pattern Sentences II for list).

5. MEASURES -BIANR AND -BU COMPARED: The measures -bianr and -bù are alike in that they both indicate a part or a section:

Shànghǎi zài Zhōngguó dōngbianr Shanghai is in the eastern part of
(or dōngbù). China.

These two measures differ in that -bù can only indicate part or section, whereas -bianr may also refer to the regions beyond the border:

Tàipíngyǎng zài Zhōngguó de The Pacific is east of China.
dōngbianr (NOT dōngbù).

Note that -bianr with the positional words shàng, xià, lǐ, wài, qián and hòu is used interchangeably with -tou (introduced in Lesson 10).

DÌÈRSHÍKÈ - LESSON 24

SELECTION AND INCLUSION - CO-VERBS OF AGENT

I Don't Remember Who Invited Me!

- A: Lǎoèr, nǐ zěnméle? Nǐ wèishénme zěnmé zhāojí a? What's the matter, Laoer? Why are you so worried?
- B: Yǒu rén qǐng wǒ chīfàn, kěshì wǒ bújìde shì shéi qǐng wǒ le. Some one has invited me to dine, but I don't remember who it was.
- A: Yěxǔ shì Liújiā, yàoburán jiùshì Chénjiā. Nǐ zài xiāngxiang ba! Perhaps it was the Lius, if it wasn't, then it was the Chens. Think it over again!
- B: Ou, wǒ xiǎngqǐlái - jiùshì Chénjiā. Kěshì wǒ wàngle shì nǎtiān le. Oh, I recollect it now! It was the Chens. But I have forgotten which day it was.
- A: Tāmen shì xiěxìn qǐngde nǐ, háishì gēn nǐ shuōde ne? Did they invite you by letter, or did they speak to you about it?
- B: Tāmen gěi wǒ xiěle yīfēng xìn, kěshì nàfēng xìn ràng wǒ xiǎo dìdì gěi rēngle. They wrote me a letter, but that letter has been thrown away by my little brother.
- A: Hài, nǐ wèishénme zěnmé buxiǎoxin ne? Tāmen qǐngle biéren meiyóu? My, why are you so careless? Did they invite anyone also?
- B: Tāmen budàn qǐngle wǒ, yě qǐngle jīwei Zhōngguó xiānshēng. Āi, zěnmé bàn ne? Wǒ yòu bújìde rìzi, yòu bújìde dìfāng. They not only invited me, they also asked a few Chinese gentlemen. Oh, what'll I do? I don't recall the day nor the place.
- A: Hòutiān wǎnshàng yǒu yīwei Chén Déhuì Xiānshēng qǐng wǒ chīfàn. Shì bushì tā? There is a Mr. Chen Dehui who has invited me for dinner day after tomorrow. Is that the one?
- B: Duìle, jiùshì tā! You're right, that's just who it is!
- A: Nàme, nǐ kéyì fàngxīnle. Wǒ yǒu qìchē. Wǒmen kéyì yìqǐqù. So you can 'rest your heart'. I have a car, and we can go together.
- B: Hǎojíle! Wǒ bīzhīdào zěnmé xièxiè nín cái hǎo. Wonderful! I don't know how best to thank you.
- A: Bié kèqǐle! Stop being polite!

VOCABULARY

yěxǔ	MA: perhaps, maybe	xiǎoxin	SV: be careful V: look out for
dàgài	MA: probably	zhāojí	SV: be worried, get excited
dāngrán	MA: of course, naturally		

huòshi	MA: either, or; whether	fàngxīn	SV: rest assured
budàn	MA: not only	búfāngxīn	SV: be uneasy (about)
yàoburán	MA: if not, then; otherwise, or else	jìde	V: remember, recollect
yàobúshi	MA: (yàoshi búshi)	rēng	V: throw (away)
kèren	N: guest	jiào or ràng	CV: (indicates agent) by
cái	A: then and only then, not until	lián	CV: even including, even
hóng	SV: be red	ne	P: (suffix to questions, see Note 2)
huáng	SV: be yellow	suíbiàn	IE: as one pleases (lit. follow convenience)
lán	SV: be blue		
lǜ	SV: be green		

PATTERN SENTENCES

I. ALTERNATIVE ANSWERS (EITHER...OR)

Patterns: (1-5) Zhè liǎngge qìchē, shì zhège kuài, shì nàge kuài?
Zhège kuài.

Which is faster of these two car, this one or that one? This one.

(6-12) Wǒmen zuò chē qù, hái shì zǒuzhe qù? Zuò chē qù ba!

Shall we go by car or walk? Let's go by car!

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nimen liǎngge hái zǐ, nǎge dà,
nǐ dà, hái shì tā dà? Tā dà.
Tā bǐ wǒ dà liǎngsuì. | Which of you two children is older,
you or he? He is older, two years
older. |
| 2. Nǎge hǎochī, yú hǎochī shì ròu
hǎochī? Wǒ shuō ròu hǎochī.
Nǐ ne? | Which is better eating, fish or
meat? I say meat is tastier. What
about you? |
| 3. Nín gāng mǎide shì yú hái shì
ròu? Wǒ liǎngyàng dōu mǎile
yidiǎnr. | Did you just buy fish or meat? I
bought a little of both. |
| 4. Zhège bǐ shì shéide, shì nǐde
hái shì tāde? Búshì wǒde.
Yěxǔ shì tāde, yěxǔ shì tā
jiějiede. | Whose pen is this, yours or his?
It isn't mine. Maybe it's his, or
maybe it's his elder sister's. |
| 5. Nǐ mǎide nǎzhāng huà huà jǐkuai
qián, sānkuai qián liǎngkuai
qián? Sānkuai qián. | How much was the painting you bought,
three dollars or two dollars? It
was three dollars. |

6. Nǐ yào zhèxiē, hái shì yào nàxiē? Wǒ dāngrán yào zhèxiē. Do you want these or those? Of course I want these.
7. Nǐ gēn wǒ, shì shéi qù, shì nǐ qù shì wǒ qù? Huò shì nǐ qù, huò shì wǒ qù, dōu kéyì. Who's going you or I? Whether you go or I go, it's all right with me.
8. Tāmen qǐng nǐ qù, shì nǐ zìjǐ yào qù? Dāngrán shì tāmen qǐng wǒ, yàoburán wǒ yìdìng buqù. Did they invite you, or are you going of your own accord? Of course they invited me, otherwise I definitely wouldn't go.
9. Zhège táng shì shéi mǎide, shì nǐ, shì nǐ tàitai? Dàgài shì wǒ tàitai mǎide, yàoburán jiù shì tā zuòde. Who bought this candy, you or your wife? My wife probably bought it, otherwise she made it.
10. Zhège táng shì mǎide, hái shì jiāli zuòde? Shì jiāli zuòde, kě shì zuòde buhǎo. Did you buy this candy, or is it home-made? It was made at home, but it's no good.
11. Nǐ hái shì gēn wǒ qù, hái shì gēn tā qù? Huò shì gēn nǐ qù, huò shì gēn tā qù, dōu xíng. Are you going with me or with him? It doesn't matter whether I go with you or with him.
12. Nǐ dào le Zhōngguó yǐhòu yào jiāoshū, shì yào zuò mǎimai? Yěxǔ jiāoshū, yěxǔ zuò mǎimai, yěxǔ zuò biéde shì. Xiǎnzài hái bùyìdìng. When you get to China, are you going to teach or go into business? Perhaps I'll teach, perhaps I'll carry on business, or perhaps I'll do something else. It is still uncertain.

II. INCLUSIVE AND EXCLUSIVE ANSWERS (BOTH...AND; NEITHER...NOR)

Patterns: (1-3) Tāmen nage zhōng yòu piányi yòu hǎokàn.

That clock of theirs is both inexpensive and pretty.

(4-6) Nàge xiǎoháir budàn huì kànshū, yě huì xiězì.

That child can not only read, but can also write.

(7-9) Lián Zhōngguó zì tā dōu (or yě) huì xiě!

He can even write Chinese characters!

1. Zhāng Xiānsheng yòu gāo yòu pàng. Mr. Zhang is both tall and stout.
2. Nǐ kàn Zhāng Tàitai, tā yě bugāo yě bupàng. Look at Mrs. Zhang, she is neither tall nor stout.
3. Wǒ dǎide zhege màozi yòu guì yòu nánkàn. This hat which I am wearing is both expensive and ugly.
4. Tā budàn huì shuō, tā yě huì zuò. He not only knows how to talk, but also knows how to act.

L. 24

- | | |
|---|---|
| 5. Wǒ bùdàn bùyuànyì qù, wǒ yě qùbùliǎo. | I not only don't wish to go, I can't go. |
| 6. Nàgè rén bùdàn yǒu liǎnggē qìchē, tā hái yǒu yìgè xiǎo fēijī. | That man not only has two cars, he has a small airplane, too. |
| 7. Tāmen dōu dǎsuan lái ma? Dōu dǎsuan lái. Lián Měishèng yě lái! | Are they all planning to come? Yes, even Meisheng is coming, too! |
| 8. Tā bùdàn dào guó Běijí, lián Nánjí tā dōu dào guó. | He's not only been to the North Pole, he's even been to the South Pole. |
| 9. Nín dàizhe qián meiyǒu? Wǒ lián yīmáo qián dōu méidài. | Do you have any money with you? No, I didn't even bring along a dime. |

III. CO-VERBS OF AGENT (JIAO OR RANG)

- | | S | CV - N | (gěi) V(1e) |
|----------|---|----------------|--|
| Pattern: | Táng | jiao háizi | (gěi) chīle. |
| | The candy was eaten by the children. | | |
| | Táng | jiao háizi dōu | (gěi) chīle. |
| | The candy was all eaten by the children. | | |
| | Táng dōu | jiao háizi | (gěi) chīle. |
| | The candy was all eaten by the children. | | |
| 1. | Ròu jiao biéren mǎiwánle. | | The meat was all bought up by others. |
| 2. | Chá dōu rang kèren gěi hēwánle. | | The tea has been all consumed by the guests. |
| 3. | Wǒ tàitai nage shǒubiǎo jiao tā gēge nǎzǒule. | | My wife's wrist watch was taken away by her elder brother. |
| 4. | Wǒ xiǎng shuō de huà rang tā dōu gěi shuōwánle. | | He has said everything I intended to say. |
| 5. | Kuàizi bié jiao xiǎo mèimei gěi rēngzai dìxia. | | Don't let little sister throw the chopsticks onto the floor. |

FLUENCY DRILL

- Jiāoshū, zuò mǎimai?
 Yao jiāoshū, yao zuò mǎimai?
 Yao jiāoshū, shi yao zuò mǎimai?
 Shi yao jiāoshū, shi yao zuò mǎimai?
 Shi yao jiāoshū, háiishi yao zuò mǎimai?
 Háiishi yao jiāoshū, háiishi yao zuò mǎimai?
 Háiishi yao jiāoshū ne, háiishi yao zuò mǎimai?
 Háiishi yao jiāoshū ne, háiishi yao zuò mǎimai ne?
 Nǐ háiishi yao jiāoshū ne, háiishi yao zuò mǎimai ne?
 Nǐ dào Zhōngguó, háiishi yao jiāoshū ne, háiishi yao zuò mǎimai ne?
 Nǐ dào Zhōngguó yǐhòu, háiishi yao jiāoshū ne, háiishi yao zuò mǎimai ne?
 Nǐ dào Zhōngguó yǐhòu, háiishi yao jiāoshū ne, háiishi yao zuò mǎimai ne?

NOTES

1. CHOICE-TYPE QUESTIONS ACCENTUATED: The alternatives presented in choice-type questions, whether the questions involve a choice between positive or negative, or between various other possible alternatives, are accentuated when one of the following patterns is used:

Nǐ qù, shi búqu?	Are you going or not?
Nǐ qù, háiishi búqu?	(same)
Nǐ shi qù, shi búqu?	(same)
Nǐ shi qù, háiishi búqu?	(same)
Nǐ háiishi qù, háiishi búqu?	(same)
Nǐ shuō qīdiǎn zhōng qù hǎo, háiishi bādiǎn zhōng qù hǎo?	Did you say it was better to go at seven or at eight?
Nǐ shi yao huángde, shi yao lánde?	Do you want the yellow one or do you want the blue?
Nǐ shi gēn Lǐ Xiānsheng xuéde, háiishi gēn ta tàitai xuéde?	Did you study with Mr. Li or with his wife?
Nǐ háiishi ài chī yú, háiishi ài chī ròu?	Do you like to eat fish or do you like to eat meat?

Note that the first part never overbalances the second.

2. SENTENCE SUFFIX NE WITH QUESTIONS: The sentence suffix ne is often added to certain questions as follows:

- (a) Ne may be attached to either one or both of the alternatives presented in the accentuated choice-type questions pattern:

NĪ gēn péngyou qù ne, shì Are you going with friends or
zìjǐ yíge rén qù? alone?

NĪ shì dao Zhōngguo qù, shì Are you going to China or to
dao Rìběn qù? Japan?

NĪ shì yao jiāoshū qù ne, Are you going to teach or to carry
háishi yao zuò mǎimai qù ne? on business?

- (b) Ne is sometimes attached to sentences containing question words:

Wǒmen míngtiān dōu yao dao Tomorrow we're all going to the
hǎibiānr qù wánr qu. NĪ beach to have fun. Why aren't
wèishénme buqù ne? Yàoshi you going? If you don't go, how
nǐ buqù, wǒmen zěnme néng can we go?
qù ne?

- (c) Ne may take the place of several words in the statement immediately preceding it:

Wǒmen dōu shuō ròu bǐ yú We all say that meat is tastier
hǎochī. NĪ ne? than fish. And you?

3. CO-VERBS OF AGENT (JIAO AND RANG): When it is desired to point out the agent of an action, the co-verbs jiào or ràng, with agent-nouns, are used:

Táng jiào (or ràng) háizi(gěi) The candy has been eaten by the
chīle. children.

Note that gěi (give) sometimes stands immediately before the main verb, without change in meaning.

When the adverb dōu is required, it may stand either before the co-verb, or before the main verb, with no difference in meaning:

Táng dōu jiào háizi gěi chīle. All of the candy has been eaten by
the children.

Táng jiào háizi dōu gěi chīle. (same)

Note that sentences using these co-verbs of agent translate into the English passive, although there is no indication of this in the Chinese verbs.

VOCABULARY

a	P: (sentence suffix, see note 4)	1,20	běi	N: north	23
ǎi	SV: be short (opp. gāo)	1	-běn	M: volume (books)	4
ài	V: love AV: like or love to	7	běnlái	MA: originally	20
bā	NU: eight	3	bèn	SV: be stupid; clumsy	21
bǎ	CV: (brings object to front of main verb)	17	bǐ	CV: compared with; than	22
-ba	P: (sentence suffix implying probability) P: (sentence suffix indicating a request)	6 16	bǐ	N: pen, pencil; any writing instrument	2
bái	SV: be white; fair	19	-biānr	M: -side, border; part	23
báitiān (MA)	N: daytime, during the day	19	biǎo	N: watch	2
-bǎi	NU: hundred	5	bié	AV: don't (imperative, búyào)	3
bān	V: move (change residence) V: move (heavier articles)	16 17	biéde	N: (an)other (person or thing)	12
bānjiā	VO: move one's residence	16	biéren	N: other people	12
bàn-, -bàn	NU: half	6	bìng	N: sickness SV: be sick	18 18
bàn	V: manage, carry out	21	bìngle	V: become sick	18
bàntiān (MA)	N: a long while	15	bù-, bù-	P: (negative prefix to verbs and adverbs)	1
bāng(zhu)	V: help (someone)	17	-bù	M: section, part	23
bāngmáng	VO: render assistance	17	búbì	AV: need not	15
bǎo	SV: be satisfied (after eating)	21	búcuò	SV: be not bad, quite good	14
bào	N: newspaper	2	búdà	A: not very	18
			búdàn	MA: not only	24
			budǒu	A: not all	2
			búfangxīn	SV: be uneasy (about)	24

búhuài	SV: be not bad, pretty good, quite good	18	chūmén	VO: go out (of the house)	16
bútài	A: not too	1	chúfáng	N: kitchen	18
búyaojǐn	IE: that's nothing!	13	chuān	V: wear; put on (clothes)	21
búxiè	IE: "don't mention it" "you're welcome" (lit. you need not thank me)	5	chuán	N: boat, ship	11
búyòng	AV: no use to	15	chuānghu	N: window	16
bùgǎndāng!	IE: you flatter me!	20	-cì	M: a time; occasion	18
bù hěn	A: not very	1	cōngming	SV: be intelligent	9
bùshūfu	SV: be uncomfortable; indisposed, not feel well	18	cóng	CV: from	11
bùyídìng	A: not necessarily; uncertain	11	cóngqián	MA: formerly	18
bùzhidào	V: not know	5	dǎsuan	V: plan to	20
cái	A: just, merely A: then and only then, not until	23 24	dǎzhàng	VO: fight, make war	20
chāzi	N: fork	14	dà	SV: be big, large	4
chá	N: tea	9	dàgài	MA: probably	24
chà	V: differ by; lack, be short	19	dàrén	N: adult, grownup	4
chàbuduō	IE: almost about	19	dài	V: wear, put on (hat, watch, etc.)	8
Cháoxiān (Cháoxiǎn)	N: Korea (also: Hánguo)	5	dài	V: take along, bring along	17
cháng	SV: be long	22	dāngrán	MA: of course, naturally	24
cháng(cháng)	A: often, usually, always	9	dāozǐ	N: knife	14
chē	N: any wheeled vehicle	11	dào	CV: to (towards) V: arrive at, reach	11 13
chēzhàn	N: station	13	-dào	indicates arrival at the goal of the action	21
chéng	N: city	10	-de	P: (N and V suffix indicating modification or possession)	5
chī	V: eat	7	Déguo	N: Germany (Deutschland)	5
-chǐ	M: a Chinese foot	23	děi	AV: have to, must	6
chū	V: exit (out)	16	děng	V: wait, wait for	16

dī	SV: be low	23	Èguo	N: Russia	5
dǐxia	N: underneath	10	èr	NU: two	3
dì-	P: (ordinalizing prefix to numbers)	13	èrshí	NU: twenty	4
dìdi	N: younger brother	4	èrshíyī	NU: twenty-one	4
dìfang	N: place	10	fázi	N: way, method	21
dìjǐ	SP: which? (of series)	13	Fǎguo	N: France	5
dōng	N: east	23	fàn	N: food (cooked rice)	7
dōngxì	N: thing	3	fànguǎnr	N: restaurant (food-eating-place)	10
dǒng	V: understand	4	fàntīng	N: dining room (eating hall)	17
-dǒng	indicates understanding of what is seen, heard, or read	21	fāngbian	SV: be convenient	22
dōu	A: all, both; in all cases	2	fángzi	N: house, building	10
dōu bù-	A: none	2	fàng	V: let go of; put, place	17
duǎn	SV: be short (opp. cháng)	22	fàngxia(lai)	V: put down	17
duì	SV: be right, correct	4	fàngxīn	SV: rest assured	24
duì	CV: to, towards (facing)	14	fēi	V: fly	23
duìbuqǐ	IE: excuse me! I'm sorry!	16	fēicháng	A: unusually	22
duìle!	IE: That's right! (indicates agreement)	13	fēiji	N: airplane (flying machine)	11
duō	SV: be much, many	6	fèixīn	IE: I have put you to much trouble!	23
-duō	NU: a few, plus, odd (after measure)	6	-fēn	M: cent, minute	6 19
duōshao	NU: how many? how much?	6	fěnbǐ	N: chalk	2
duó(me)	A: how? to what degree?	23	-fēng	M: (measure for letters)	15
érzi	N: son	9	fùmǔ	N: parents	8
è	SV: be hungry	21	fùqin	N: father	4
			gānjing	SV: be clean	21
			gāngbǐ	N: (steel)pen	2

gāngcái	MA: just a moment ago	19	háizi	N: child	5
gāng(gāng)	A: just this minute	19	háizide	N: the child's, of the child	5
gāo	SV: be tall, high	1	hǎi	N: sea	
gāoxìng	SV: be happy, in high spirits AV: be glad to	18	hǎo	SV: be good, well	1
gàosòng (gàosu)	V: tell, inform	5	-hǎo	indicates satisfactory completion of the action	21
gēge	N: elder brother	4	bǎo buhǎo?	IE: how about (it)?	3
gē(r)	N: song	7	hǎojǐ	NU: quite a few	15
-ge	M: single person or thing	4	hǎokàn	SV: be goodlooking	2
gěi	V: give CV: for; to (for benefit of)	3 14	hǎole	V: be well again; it's ready, done	18
gēn	CV: with; and (following)	3	hǎotīng	SV: be good to listen to, pretty	9
gèng	A: still more, even SV: -er	22	hǎoxiē	NU: a good many; a good deal of	15
gōngfu	N: leisure or free time	14	-hào	M: day (of month); number (of house, room, etc.)	
gòu	SV: be sufficient, enough	6	hē	V: drink	
gòule!	IE: that'll be enough!	14	hé	N: river	22
gùshi	N: story	12	hēi	SV: be black; dark	19
guānshang	V: close (up) (opp. kāi)	16	hěn	A: very; quite	1
guì	SV: be expensive	2	hěn bu-	A: very un-	1
guìxìng	IE: what is your (sur)name?	5	hěn duō	SV: many, very many	6
guó	N: country, nation	5	hóng	SV: be red	24
guò	V: pass, exceed; cross over	19	hòulai	MA: afterwards, and then	15
-guò	P: (experiential suffix to verbs)	20	hòutian	(MA)N: day after tomorrow	20
hái	A: still, yet, again	12	hòutou	N: back	10
			huà	N: speech (spoken words); language	7
			huà	V: draw or paint	9

huài	SV: be bad	18	jiào	EV: is called, named 5 V: call (some one) 16 CV: tell, order; let 16 CV: (indicates agent) by 24	
huàile	V: become spoiled, get out of order	18			
huàr	N: picture (drawing or painting)	4	jiē	N: street	11
huáng	SV: be yellow	24	jiějie	N: elder sister	4
-huí	M: a time; occurrence	18	jièshao	V: introduce	20
huí	V: return (to)	15	jīnnián (MA)	N: this year	13
huíguó	VO: return to one's native country	15	jīntian (MA)	N: today	12
huíjiā	VO: return home	15	jìn	V: enter (in)	16
huílai	V: come back, return here	12	jìn	SV: be near	23
huì	AV: can, know how to	7	jìnchéng	VO: go into the city or downtown	16
huǒchē	N: train	11	jīngguo	V: pass through or by, via	23
huǒchēzhàn	N: railroad station	13	jiǔ	NU: nine	3
huòshi	MA: either, or; whether	24	jiǔ	N: wine or liquor	9
-jīle	P: (suffix to SVs, indicating exaggerated degree)		jiù	SV: be old (not new)	8
jǐ-	NU: how many? (answer usually implies only a few)	4	jiù	A: only, just 6 A: at once 18 A: then 15 (introduces subsequent action)	
jiā	N: home; family	10	-jù	M: (measure for huà)	14
Jiānadà	N: Canada	5	jùzi	N: sentence	14
jiàn	V: see, meet (more formal than kàn)		juéde	V: feel that, consider	20
-jian	M: article, piece, item	17	kāi	V: open; start away (train, bus, ship); operate (car)	
-jiàn	indicates perception of what is seen, heard, or smelled	21	kàn	V: look; look at; read 2 V: see, visit 11 V: see, think, consider 20 V: it depends upon 23	
jiāo	V: teach	9	kànjian	V: see	18
jiāoshū	VO: teach	9			

kéyǐ	AV: may, can, be permitted to	7	lí	CV: from (be separated or distant from)	23
kě	SV: be thirsty	21	líkāi	V: leave (a place)	23
kě	A: indeed, certainly, however	19	lǐ(lù)	M: a Chinese li (1/3 mile)	23
kěshi	MA: but, however	4	lǐbài	N: week	13
-kè	M: lesson	15	lǐtōu	N: inside	10
-kè	M: quarter-hour	19	lǐhai	SV: be fierce, strong, severe	22
kèqǐ	SV: be polite, stand on ceremony	7	lǐkè(jiu)	A: immediately	18
kèren	N: guest	24	lián	CV: even including, even	24
kètīng	N: parlor (guest hall)	16	liǎn	N: face (lit. or fig.)	21
kěn	AV: be willing to	21	liǎng-	NU: two or couple of	4
kǒngpà	V: be afraid that; perhaps, probably	21	liàng	SV: be light or bright (opp. dark)	19
kǒudair	N: pocket	17	líng	NU: zero	6
kū	V: cry, cry about	18	liù	NU: six	3
kuài	SV: be fast, quick A: quickly, soon	16	lóu	N: storied building	10
-kuài	M: dollar M: piece (lit. lump)	6 15	lóushang	N: upstairs	10
kuàizi	N: chopsticks	14	lóutī	N: stairs	21
lái	V: come (here)	11	lù	N: road, route	16
-lái	PV: indicates arrival here	21	lǚguǎn	N: hotel	15
lán	SV: be blue	24	lǜ	SV: be green	24
lǎojià	IE: may I trouble you? much obliged!	17	ma	P: (sentence suffix to simple questions)	1
lǎo	SV: be old (in years) A: always, keep on	8 20	mǎi	V: buy	2
-le	P: (verb and sentence suffix, indicating completion of action)	12	mǎimai	N: business (buy-sell)	7
lèi	SV: be tired	1	mài	V: sell; sell for	2
lěng	SV: be cold	22	màigěi	V: sell to (so-and-so)	6

mǎn	SV: be slow	16	nà	SP: that (in general)	13
mǎng	SV: be busy, hurried	1	nà-	SP: that (there); the other	4
-máo	M: dime	6	(nà) bú yaojǐn	IE: that's nothing! never mind!	13
màozi	N: hat	8	nà(me)	A: in that way, to that degree, so	22
méiyǒu, méiyóu	V: don't have, haven't, there isn't, there aren't	3	nàr	N: there	10
méi(you)	P: (verb prefix, negating completion of action)	12	nàxiē	NUM: those	4
méi(you) fázi	IE: there's no way out! it can't be helped!	21	nàxiē zhāng zhǐ	PH: those sheets of paper	4
méirén	PH: there are none who(nobody)	6	nán-	N: male (of persons)	5
méi shénme!	IE: don't mention it! it's nothing at all!	12	nánde	N: man, male	
méiyìsi	SV: be dull, flat	8	nánháizi	N: boy, male child	5
měi-	NU: each	18	nánrén	N: man, male	5
Měiguó	N: America (U.S.A.)	2	nánxuésheng	N: man student	5
mèimei	N: younger sister	4	nán	SV: be difficult, hard	9
mén	N: door	16	nán	N: south	23
míngbai	V: understand (clearly)	18	ne	P: (sentence suffix indicating continuance of action in positive statements)	10
míngnián (MA)	N: next year	13		P: (sentence suffix indicating suspense in negative statements)	12
míngtian (MA)	N: tomorrow	12		P: (suffix to questions)	24
míngzi	N: name, given name	5	néng	AV: can, be able to	7
mǔqin	N: mother	4	nǐ	N: you (sing)	1
ná	V: take hold of; take, carry (smaller articles)	17	nǐde	N: your, yours	5
náqilai	V: pick up	17	nǐmen	N: you (pl)	1
nǎ-	SP: which?	4	nǐmende	N: your, yours	5
nǎr	N: where?	10	-nián	M: year	13

niánnián	A: year by year	13	qiānbǐ	N: lead pencil	2
niàn	V: read aloud; study	9	qián	N: money	3
niànshū	VO: study; go to school	9	qián-	N: front; former	20
nín	N: polite for nǐ	1	qiántian(MA)	N: day before yesterday	20
noun-de	N: (possessive form)	5	qiántou	N: front	10
nǚ	N: female (of persons)	5	qīngchū	SV: be clear (in meaning)	18
nǚde	N: women, female	5	qīng	V: invite, request; please	3
nǚer	N: daughter	9	qǐngwèn	PH: may I inquire?	3
nǚháizi	N: girl female child	5	qǐng zuò	IE: please sit down!	11
nǚrén	N: woman, female	5	qù	V: go (there)	11
nǚxuésheng	N: women student, co-ed	5	-qù	PV: indicates arrival there	21
pà	V: be afraid of; fear that	21	qùnián (MA)	N: last year	13
pángbiānr	N: the side of, flank	23	-r	P: (diminutive suffix to nouns)	17
pàng	SV: be fat (of persons)	22	ràng	CV: (indicates agent) by	24
pǎo	V: run	16	rè	SV: be hot	22
péngyou	N: friend	4	rén	N: man, person	4
piányi	SV: be expensive	2	rénrén	N: everyone (subject only)	4
píngcháng	SV: be ordinary common	20	rènde, rènshi	V: know, recognize, be acquainted with	20
-pù	N: -store, -shop	10	rēng	V: throw (away)	24
pùzi	N: store	10	Rìběn	N: Japan	5
qī	NU: seven	3	rìzi	N: day; a special day	19
qíguài	SV: be strange, queer	21	róngyi	SV: be simple, easy	9
qǐlai	V: rise, get up	19	ròu	N: meat	
qìchē	N: automobile, car	11	sān	NU: three	3
qìchezhàn	N: bus station or stop	13	shān	N: hill, mountain	21
qiān	NU: thousand	5	shàng	M: ascend, go up on; go to	15

shàngchē	VO: board a train or car	15	shūfu	SV: be comfortable	18
shàng(ge) libái	(MA)N: last week	13	shuǐ	N: water	9
shàng(ge) yuè	(MA)N: last month	13	shuì	N: tax	6
shàngjiē	VO: to the shopping district	13	shuìjiào	VO: sleep, retire	19
shàngkè	VO: go to class	15	shuō	V: say (that)	4
shànglóu	VO: come or go upstairs	15	shuō gùshi	VO: tell a story	12
shàngtóu	N: above, top	10	shuō shuo	V: tell about it, talk about it	4
shàngwǔ	(MA)N: forenoon	19	sì	NU: four	3
shàngxué	VO: go to school	15	sòng	V: send, deliver (things); send, escort, see off	17
shǎo	SV: be little in quantity, few	6	sòng(gěi)	V: present as a gift	17
sháo	N: spoon	14	suíbiàn	IE: as one pleases (lit. follow convenience)	24
shéi	N: who?	1	-suì	M: year(s) old	18
shéide	N: whose?	5	suìshu	N: age (year count)	23
shén(me)	N: what?	2	suǒyī	MA: therefore, so	11
shēngqì	VO: get angry, be angry	18	suǒyǒude	N: all	22
shí	NU: ten	3	tā	N: he, she, him, her	1
shíèr	NU: twelve	4	tāde	N: his, her, hers	5
shíhou	N: time	13	tāmen	N: they, them	1
shíyī	NU: eleven	4	tāmende	N: their, theirs	5
shì	EV: is, are (equals)	5	tài	A: too, excessively	1
shì(qing)	N: affair; undertaking	7	tài bu-	A: decidedly not	1
shìjiè(shang)	N: the world	22	tàitai	N: Mrs., madam; polite for wife	5
shǒu	N: hand	17	tán	V: converse; chat about	16
shòu	SV: be thin (opp. pàng)	22	tánhuà	VO: carry on conversation	16
shū	N: book	2	tāng	N: soup	14
shūfáng	N: study, den (book room)	17	táng	N: sugar, candy	7

tèbie	SV: be special, distinctive	20	-wèi	M: (polite for persons)	5
tì	CV: for (in place of)	14	wèishénme	MA: why? (for what reason)	10
-tiān	M: day	13	wèn	V: ask, inquire of or about	4
tiānqi	N: weather, climate	22	wèn...hǎo	IE: inquire after another's welfare	14
tiāntiān	A: every day	13	wènwen	V: make inquiries	4
-tiáo	M: (measure for rivers, roads, fish, etc.)	22	wǒ	N: I, me	1
tīng gùshi	VO: listen to a story	12	wǒde	N: my, mine	5
tīngjian	V: hear	18	wǒmen	N: we, us	1
tīngshuō	IE: hear(d) it said that	14	wǒmende	N: our, ours	5
tóu	N: head	17	wūzi	N: room	10
tóu-	P: first (see Note 5)	18	wǔ	NU: five	5
tuō	V: take off (clothes)	21	wǔfàn	N: noon meal	19
wàiguo	N: foreign country	2	xī	N: west	23
wàitou	N: outside	10	xīwang	V: hope that, hope for, expect that	13
-wán	PV: indicates end or completion of the action	21	xǐ	V: wash	21
wánr	V: play	14	xǐhuan	V: like, be pleased with AV: like to, enjoy	3 8
wǎn	SV: be late	19	xǐhuan kàn	AV-V: like to read (see Les 2 Note 2.1)	3
wǎn	N: bowl	14	xià	V: descend, go down from	15
-wǎn	M: bowl (of)	14	xià(ge) (MA)N: next week		13
wǎnfàn	N: supper, dinner (late meal)	12	libái		
wǎnshang (MA)N:	evening	12	xià(ge) (MA)N: next month		13
-wàn	NU: ten-thousand	6	yuè		
wǎng, wàng	CV: towards (in direction of)	23	xiàtou	N: below, bottom	10
wàng	V: forget	18	xiàwǔ (MA)N:	afternoon	19
			xiān	A: first	14
			xiānsheng	N: Mr., sir, gentleman; teacher; polite for husband; you, sir!	5

xiànzài	MA: now, at present	7	yàobúshi	MA: (yàoshi búshi)	24
xiāngxia	N: country (rural)	8	yào jǐn	SV: be important	13
xiǎng	V: think, think about; desire AV: consider, plan to; want to	6	yào kàn	AV-V: want to read	2
xiǎngxiang	V: think (it) over	6	yàoshi	MA: if, in case	19
xiǎojiě	N: Miss; polite for daughter, young lady, girl	5	yě	A: also, too; (with negative statements) either	2
xiǎo	SV: be little, small	4	yě...yě...	A: both...and	2
xiǎoxin	SV: be careful V: look out for	24	yě bù-... yě bu	A: neither...nor	2
xiào	V: laugh or smile; laugh at	20	yěxǔ	MA: perhaps, maybe	24
xiàohua	N: a joke V: make fun of	20	-yè	M: night	19
-xiē	M: quantity of; several	4	yèli	(MA)N: nighttime, during the night	19
xiě	V: write	7	yī	NU: one	3
xièxie	V: thanks, thank you	3	yīshang	N: clothes	21
xīn	SV: be new	8	yídìng	A: certainly, definitely	11
xìn	N: letter, mail	14	yígòng	MA: altogether, in all	6
xíng	SV: be satisfactory, all right, 'can do'	11	yíkuàir	A: together (also as N)	14
xìng	N: surname EV: be surnamed	5	yílù píngān	IE: a pleasant journey!	20
xué	V: study; learn AV: learn to, study how to	8	yíyàng	SV: be the same, alike, similar A: equally, similarly	22
xuésheng	N: student (learner)	5	yíyè	(MA)N: a night, the whole night	19
xuéxiào	N: school	10	...yǐhòu	MA: after...	20
-yàng	M: kind, sort, way	22	yǐhòu	MA: (t)hereafter	20
yàngzi	N: style, appearance; sample	22	yǐjing	A: already	12
yào	V: want; want to AV: going to, expect to; shall, will	2 11	yǐqián	MA: previously; formerly	20
yàoburán	MA: if not, then; otherwise, or else	24	...yǐqián	MA: before..., ...ago	20
			yǐzi	N: chair	3

yìdiǎnr	N: a little, a bit; some	6	yǒurén...	N: some people..., other people...	4
Yìguo	N: Italy	5	yǒuyìsi	SV: be interesting	8
yìhuǐr	(MA)N: (in) a moment	16	yǒuyòng	SV: be useful	14
yìsi	N: idea, meaning	8	yòu	A: again (in past)	17
yìtiān	(MA)N: a day; a whole day	15	yòu	N: right	23
yìzhí	A: straight on, direct	23	yú	N: fish	14
yìzhāng huà	N: a picture	4	yùbei	V: prepare	21
yìzhāng zhǐ	N: a sheet of paper	4	yuǎn	SV: be far	23
yīnwei	MA: because (of), for	10	yuànyì	AV: wish to, be willing to	7
yīngdāng	AV: ought to, should	15	yuè	N: month	13
Yīngguo	N: England	5	zài	V: be at, in, or on CV: at, in or on	10
-yīnglǐ(lǜ)	M: an English mile	23	zài	A: again (in future)	17
Yīngwén	N: English language	9	zàijiàn	IE: goodbye! (lit. see you again)	6
yòng	V: use, employ CV: with, (using)	14	zāng	SV: be dirty	21
yǒu	V: have, has V: there is or are CV: be as much as; be as	3 8 22	zǎo	SV: be early	19
yǒubìng	VO: be sick	18	zǎofàn	N: breakfast (early meal)	12
yǒude	N: some, some of, certain (used only in subject)	4	zǎoshang(MA)N:	morning	12
yǒude... ye yǒude	N: some..., others	4	zě(n)me	A: how? in what way? A: why? how is it that?	11
yǒude rén	N: some people (can't follow verb)	4	zě(n)me bàn	IE: what can be done about it?	19
yǒu(de) shíhou	MA: sometimes	13	zě(n)me le	IE: what's happened? what's the matter?	18
yǒumíng	SV: be prominent, well-known	20	zě(n)meyàng?	IE: how about...? how's everything?	22
yǒurén...	V: some people (can't follow a verb)	4	zènme	A: in this way, to this degree, so	22
			zhāi	V: take off (hat)	21

zhàn	V: stand	16	zhù	V: live or stay in or at	15
zhànqilai	V: stand up	11	zhuōzi	N: table	3
-zhāng	M: (measure for paper, pictures, tables, etc.)	4	zì	N: word (written character)	7
zhāojí	SV: be worried, get excited	24	zìjǐ	N: self, oneself	10
-zháo	PV: indicates success in attaining object of the action	21	zǒu	V: walk; go, leave V: go by way of; go (of watches, cars etc.)	12
zhǎo	V: look or hunt for	15	zuì	A: the most, -est	9
-zhe	P: (verb suffix, indicating continuance)	17	zuótiān (MA)	N: yesterday	12
zhè-	SP: this (here)	4	zuǒ	N: left	23
zhème	A: in this way, to this degree, so	22	zuò	V: do, make; act part of	7
zhèxiē	NU-M: these	4	zuò	V: ride on (sit on) CV: go by V: sit	11 16
zhèxiē rén	N: these people	4	zuòxia	V: sit down	11
zhēn	A: truly, really	6			
zhēnde	IE: It's true.	6			
zhèng(zai)	A: just in the midst of	17			
zhèr	N: here	10			
-zhǐ	M: (measure for writing instrument)	5			
zhīdao	V: know, know of or about	5			
zhǐ	N: paper	4			
zhōng	N: clock	2			
zhōngfàn	N: lunch (middle meal)	12			
Zhōngguo	N: China	2			
zhōngtóu	N: an hour	19			
zhōngwǔ (MA)	N: noon	19			

INDEX

a, sentence suffix used in direct address	20 N4
Accent (see stress)	
Action and attendant circumstances contrasted	15 PIV
Addresses and dates	13 N6
Adjectives (see Stative verbs)	
Adverbs (A):	
in series	1 PD N1.5
movable (MA)	2 PC N5.1
certain nouns function as movable	4 N3
in commands and requests	12 Voc
-shì attached for emphasis	16 PV N5
dǒu, use of	18 N6
" relation to subject and transposed object	2 PC N5
" in inclusive statements	3 PC N2.3
" or yě in exclusive statements	14 PIII N3
jiù (then) introduces subsequent statements	14 PIV N3
	15 PI N1
Agent with co-verbs jiào and ràng	24 PIII N3
Answers: simple	1 PD N3, 5
Auxiliary Verbs (AV):	
yào as	7 PI N1
néng, huì, kéyì compared	2 PD N4.1
	7 PI N2
bā, tones on number	3 PD N3.1
bǎ construction (with co-verb bǎ)	17 PI N1
ba, sentence suffix: indicates probability	13 PIII N3
indicates a request or mild command	16 PV N6
bǐ, comparison with co-verb	22 PIII N2
-biānr and -bù, measures, compared	23 PV N5
'both...and', inclusive answers	24 PII
bù-, negative prefix to verbs:	
relation to adverbs	1
tones on	2 PC N5, 5.1
	1 PD N2.1
Cardinal numbers	3 Voc PD N3
chà and guò, use of	19 PIII
Changed status with -le	18 PI N1
Choice-type questions:	
with objects	1 PC N4
accentuated	2 PC N4
	24 PI N1

-cì and -húì, measures, express occurrence	18 PIII N3
Circumstances, attendant: stressed with shì...de and action contrasted	12 PIII N6 15 PIV
Cities, countries, not take positional suffix	10 N7
Classroom activity	11 12 17
Clauses modifying: precede nouns	9 N1
in sentences of general nature	9 PI
in sentences of specific nature	9 PII N2
relation to other qualifying elements	9 N2
which become nouns	9 N3
which follow shì stress circumstances	12 PIII N6
dependent, with verb -le only	15 PI N1
Clock; telling time by the amounts of time by the time when by the time spent by the inquiring time by the	19 Voc N1 19 Voc N2 19 PI 19 PII 19 Voc N4
Commands; adverbs in mild, and requests (with sentence suffix ba)	14 PV N5 16 PV N6
Comparison: of lengths with co-verb bǐ of distances with co-verbs lí and bǐ various degrees of degrees of, with adverbs gèng and zuì	22 PIII N2 23 PII N2 23 PII N4 22 PIV N3
Completed action with -le: and verbs of motion and questions reviewed and sentences with simple objects and sentences with measured objects and sentences with time spent expressions and purpose of coming and going negated with prefix méi(you)	12 PI N1 12 N4 12 PII N1 15 PII N2 15 PIII N3 12 PI N5 12 PI N2
Compound verbs: with -lai and -qu with -lai and -qu, as suffixes to other verbs some other common resultative	16 PI N1 17 N2 16 PVI 21 Voc PI N1
Compounds, verb-object (VO)	7 PI N3
cóng as co-verb of motion and direction	11 PI N2
Continuance: with sentence suffix ne with ne reviewed with verb suffix -zhe with both -zhe and ne	10 PII N6 17 PIII 17 PII N3 17 PIV N3
Conveyance: with co-verb zuò stressed with shì...de construction	11 PII N4 12 PIII N6
Countries: names how formed cities, etc., not take positional suffix	5 PD N3 10 N7

Co-verbs (CV):	
of location (zài)	10 N5
of motion and direction (cóng and dào)	10 PIII N5
zài, cóng, and dào compared	11 PI N2
of conveyance (zuò)	11 N3
of interest, etc., (gēn, gěi, tì, yòng and zuì)	11 PII N4
bǎ (of bǎ construction)	14 PI N1
of comparison (bǐ)	17 PI N1
of separation (lí)	22 PIII N2
of agent (jiào and ràng)	23 PI N1
	24 PIII N3
Dates and addresses	13 N6
dào: as co-verb of motion and direction	11 PI N2
as suffix to verbs of motion	16 PIII N3
as ending to resultative compound verbs	21 Voc
Day of week, inquiring	13 N5
Days, how designated	13 Voc
-de: modifying suffix	8 N1
suffix to modifying nouns and stative verbs	8 PI, II N2, 3
often omitted between pronouns and personalized nouns	5 PD N1.2
and stative verbs duō and shǎo	8 N5
suffix to verbs in expressions of manner	16 PIV N4
suffix to modifying clauses	9 PI, II N1
suffix to clauses after shì(shì...de construction)	12 PIII N6
and expressions of value	8 N2
before shíhou in relative time	20 PIII N3
modified nouns sometimes understood	8 PI, II N4
Degrees of comparison: various	23 PII N4
with adverbs gèng and zuì	22 PIV N3
Dependent clauses with verb -le only	15 PI N1
Description of length, distance, etc.	22 PI 23 PI N1
dì-: ordinalizing prefix to numbers	13 Voc N4
compared with tóu-	18 PIII N5
Diminutive suffix -r(-er) to nouns	17 N4
Direct object	2 PC N1
Direction and motion: with verbs lái and qù	11 PI N1
with co-verbs cóng and dào	11 PI N2
Dissimilarity with co-verbs gēn; and verb méiyǒu	22 PIII N1
Distance: description of	23 PI N1
comparison of	23 PII N2
measuring, with yǒu	23 PIII, IV N3
-dǒng as ending to resultative compound verbs	21 Voc

dōu: use of adverb	2 PC N5
relation to subject and transposed object	3 PC N2.1
with indefinites	14 PIII, IV N3, 4
or yě in exclusive statements	14 PIII, IV N3, 4
Drills, fluency (see Fluency Drills)	
duō and shǎo: and suffix -de	8 N5
in adjectival function always with modifier	8 N5
duōshao compared with jǐ-	6 PD N1
Endings to resultative compound verbs, common	21 Voc
'either...or' alternative answers	24 PI N3
Equational verbs (EV)	5 PC N1
èr and liǎng compared	6 PD N4
Exclusive answers ('neither...nor')	24 PII
Exclusive statements with indefinites and dōu or yě	14 PIII N3
Exclusiveness intensified, with dōu or yě	14 PIV N4
Existence with verb yǒu	10 PI N3
Experiential verb suffix -guo	20 PI N1
Fluency Drills: Specified and numbered nouns	4
question words and equational verbs	5
modifying clauses	9
location with zài	10
purpose of going	11
motion and direction with -le	12
shì...de construction	13
co-verb gēn	14
both verb and sentence -le	15
compound verbs	16
continuance with -zhe	17
hǎ construction	18
supposition with yàoshi...jiu	19
relative time with ...yīqián	20
resultative compound verbs	21
similarity with gēn, and comparison with bǐ	22
comparison of distances with co-verbs lí and bǐ	23
choice-type questions accentuated with shì...	24
háishi	
-ge, most common measure	4 PC N1
gēn, similarity and dissimilarity with co-verb	22 PII, III N1
gèng, comparison with adverb	22 PIV N3
guìxìng and nín	5 PD N2

guò and chà, use of	19 PIII
-guo, experiential suffix to verbs	20 PI N1
hǎo as prefix to verbs	7 PIII N5
-hǎo as ending to resultative compound verbs	21 Voc
-huí and -cì, measures, express occurrence	18 PIII N3
'if...then' with yàoshi...jiu	19 PV N5
Imminent action with -le	18 PII N2
Inclusive answers ('both...and')	24 PII
Inclusive statements with indefinites and dōu	14 PIII N3
Indefinite expressions such as 'two or three'	6 PD N2.4
Indefinites; question words used as with dōu	14 PII N2 14 PIII, IV N3, 4
Indirect object	3 PC N1
Interest, etc., co-verbs of	14 PI N1
Inquiring: day of week, etc. time of day prices	13 N5 19 Voc N4 6
Inverted sentences and transposed objects	3 PC N2
-jǐ compared with duōshao	6 PD N1
-jǐle, ending to stative verbs, indicates exaggerated degree	16 Voc
-jiàn as ending to resultative compound verbs	21 Voc
jiào as co-verb of agent	24 PIII N3
jiù (then) introduces subsequent action	15 PI N1
lái and qù express motion and direction	11 PI N1
-lai and -qu: as endings to compound verbs as directive particles as endings to resultative compound verbs	16 PI N1 16 PI N1 21 Voc
-le: suffix to verbs, indicates completed action suffix to verbs of motion and direction and changed status and imminent action in sentences with simple objects in sentences with measured objects	21 N1 12 PI N1 18 PI N1 18 PII N2 12 PII N1 15 PII N2

in sentences with time spent expressions and purpose of coming or going only, in dependent clauses and reduplicated verbs in questions, reviewed and shì...de construction contrasted	15 PIII N3 12 PI N5 15 PI N1 18 PIV N4 12 PII N4 15 PIV
Length: description of comparison of measuring with yǒu	22 PII 22 PIII N2 23 PIII, IV N3
lí, co-verb of separation	23 PI N1
liǎng and èr compared	6 PD N4
-liǎo, as ending to resultative compound verbs	21 Voc
líng (zero), use of	6 PC N2.3
Location: with zài as main verb with co-verb zài as setting for main action	10 PII N4 10 PIII N5
ma: suffix to simple questions not affixed to questions containing question words	1 PIII N6 3 PC N3
Manner: describing, with VOVde pattern in commands and requests with verb suffix -zhe, as setting for main action	16 PIV N4 16 PV N5
Measures (M): most common (-ge) more specific -cǐ and -huí express occurrence -biǎnr and -bù compared	4 PC N1 4 PC N1 4 PC N2, 3 18 PIII N3 23 PV N5
Measured objects: and -le time spent expressions in	15 PII N2 15 PIII N3
Measuring distances, etc. with verb yǒu	23 PIII, IV N3
méi-: negative prefix to verb yǒu only short for méiyǒu	3 PD N1 8 N7
méi(yǒu): negates completed action similarity and dissimilarity with	12 PI N2 22 PII, III N1
-men, suffix to pronouns and personalized nouns	1 PD N1
Modification: two nouns, by position personalized nouns by pronouns specified nouns by pronouns positional nouns by pronouns suffix -de in nouns by other nouns nouns by stative verbs nouns by clauses modified nouns often understood	2 PD N1.2 5 PD N1.2 4 PC N4 11 N6 8 N1 8 PI N2 8 PII N3 9 PI, II N1 8 PI, II N4

Money expressions: how formed	6 PC N1
abbreviated forms	6 PC N4
sums up to \$100	6 PE N2
sums from \$100	6 PE N3
Months, how designated	13 Voc
Motion and direction: with verbs lái and qù	11 PI N1
with co-verbs cǒng and dào	11 PI N2
Movable adverbs (MA):	4 PD N3
certain nouns function as	12 Voc
ne: sentence suffix indicates continuance	10 PII N6
continuance with, reviewed	17 PIII
indicates suspense in negative statements	12 PI N3
suffix to questions	24 PI N2
Negative prefix: bù- to verbs	1
bù-, tones on	1 PD N2.1
bù-, relation to adverbs	2 PC N2
méi- to verb yǒu only	3 PD N1
méi(you) negates completed action	12 PI N2
'neither...nor', exclusive answers	24 PII
nín and guǐxing	5 PD N2
Nouns (N): preceded by measures	4 PC N1
pronouns regarded as	1 PD N1.1
specified	4 PC N2
numbered	4 PC N3.3
specified and numbered	4 PC N3.1
successive	2 PD N1.2
modified by other nouns	8 PI N2
modified by stative verbs	8 PII N3
modified by clauses	9 PI, II N1
clauses become	9 N3
modified, understood	8 PI, II N4
specified and/or numbered, understood	9 N3
after clauses following shì, understood	12 PIII N6
before expressions of manner, understood	16 PIV N4
positional	10 PI, II, III, IV N1
positional, as suffixes	10 N2
certain, function as movable adverbs	12 Voc
Numbered nouns	4 PC N3.3
Numbers (NU): cardinal 1-99	3 Voc PD N3
11-99, how formed	4 PD N1
accent in three-syllable numbers	4 PD N1.3
from 100 up	4 Voc PE N1
tones on yī	3 PD N3.1
tones on qī and bā	3 PD N3.1
líng, use of	6 PC N2.3
counting telephone-style	6 PC N2.4
èr and liǎng compared	6 PD N4
indefinite expressions such as '2 or 3'	6 PD N2.4
ordinal, with dì-	13 Voc N4
with dì- and tóu- compared	18 PIII N5
jī- and duōshao compared	6 PD N1

Objects; direct	2 PC N1
indirect	3 PC N1
transposed in inverted sentences	3 PC N2, 3
in choice-type questions	2 PC N4
simple, and -le	12 PII N1
measured, and -le	15 PII N2
time spent expressions as measured	15 PIII N3
Occurrence with measures -cì and -húf	18 PIII N3
Ordinal numbers (with dī-)	13 Voc N4
Ordinalizing prefixes dī- and tóu- compared	18 PIII N5
Particles (see Prefixes and Suffixes)	1 PD N1.4
Passive voice (see Co-verbs of agent)	
Places, names of, not take positional suffix	10 N7
Place stressed with shì...de construction	12 PIII N6
Positional nouns:	10 PI, II, III, IV N1
before verb yǒu indicate existence	10 PI N3
following verb zài indicate location	10 PII N4
following co-verb zài as setting for action	10 PIII N5
as suffixes to other nouns	10 N2
Potential form of resultative compound verbs	21 Voc PI N1
Prefixes: negative, bù- to verbs	1
negative, méi- to verb yǒu only	3 PD N1
negative, méi(you) negating completed action	12 PI N2
ordinalizing, dī- to numbers	13 Voc N4
ordinalizing, tóu- compared with dī-	18 PIII N5
Prices, asking and giving	6 PC N4
Probability with sentence suffix ba	13 PIII N3
Pronouns: regarded as nouns	1 PD N1.1
modify personalized nouns	4 PC N4
modify specified nouns	4 PC N3
modify positional nouns	11 N6
Purpose of coming or going: three patterns	11 PIII N5
and -le	12 N5
stressed with shì...de construction	12 PIII N6
qī, tones on number	3 PD N3.1
qù and lái express motion and direction	11 PI N1
-qu and -lai: as endings to compound verbs	16 PI N1
as directive particles	16 PIII N3
as endings to resultative compound verbs	21 Voc

Questions: simple and choice-type	1 PC N4
choice-type with objects	2 PC N4
choice-type accentuated with shì...háishi	24 PI N1
with question words never take suffix ma	3 PC N3
and completed action, reviewed	12 N4
with resultative compound verbs, how formed	21 Voc (1)
Question words: position of	3 PC N3
jī- and duōshao compared	6 PD N1
as indefinites	14 PII N2
-r (-er), diminutive suffix to nouns	17 N4
ràng as co-verb of agent	24 PIII N3
Reduplication of verbs:	9 N4
reviewed	18 PIV
and -le	18 PIV N4
Relative time: general	20 PII N2
specific	20 PIII N3
Requests with sentence suffix ba	16 PV N6
Resultative compound verbs (RCV):	21 N1
common endings to	21 Voc
sentences illustrating potential type	21 PI N1
questions containing, how formed	21 Voc (1)
accent in	21 Voc (2)
Sentences: simple, with stative verbs	1 PC N1
simple with adverbial modifiers	1 PC N2
subject-verb-object	2 PC N1
with indirect and direct objects	3 PC N1
inverted with transposed objects	3 PC N2
shì affixed to adverbs for emphasis	18 N6
shì...de construction: stresses attendant	12 PIII N6
circumstances	15 PIV
contrasted with -le	
shì...háishi in accentuated choice-type questions	24 PI N1
Similarity with co-verb gēn: and verb yǒu	22 PII N1
Specified nouns	4 PC N2, 3
Specifiers (SP):	4 PC N2, 3
before equational verbs as nouns	5 PC N1
relation to modifying clauses	9 PII N2
relation to modifying pronouns	4 PC N4
Specified and numbered nouns	4 PC N3
Stative verbs (SV):	1 PD N1.3
function as adjectives	8 PII N3
function as adverbs	7 N5
with -le indicates changed status	18 PI N1

Stress (accent): in three-syllable numbers in resultative compound verbs	3 PD N1.3 21 Voc (2)
Stressing attendant circumstances: subject of the action place, conveyance, and purpose time when	15 PIV 12 PIII N6 13 PII N2
Subsequent action introduced by jiù (then)	15 PI N1
Suffixes: sentence ma indicates question sentence ne indicates continuance verb -zhe indicates continuance sentence ne indicates suspense in negative statements sentence ne in questions sentence ba indicates probability sentence ba indicates a request sentence a used in direct address -de, suffix to nouns, stative verbs, and clauses indicates modification -le, suffix to verbs and sentences indicates completed action -guo, experiential suffix to verbs -r (-er), diminutive suffix to nouns -jile, suffix to stative verbs indicates exaggerated degree -men, suffix to pronouns and personalized nouns indicates plurality -lai and qu as directive compound verbs as positional nouns as	1 PC N2 10 PII N6 17 PII N3 12 PI N3 24 PI N2 13 PIII N3 16 PV N6 20 N4 8, 9 12 PI N1 20 PI N1 17 N4 16 Voc 1 PD N1 16 PIII N3 17 N2 10 N2
Supposition with yàoshi...jiu	19 PV N5
Surnames precede titles	5 PD N2.2
Suspense with sentence suffix ne	12 PI N3
Time: larger units of general relative specific relative	19 N3 20 PII N2 20 PIII N3
Time by the clock: telling amounts of inquiring	19 Voc N1 19 Voc N2 19 Voc N4
Time spent: expressions follow verb by the clock expressions in measured objects	15 PIII N3 19 PII 15 PIII N3
Time when: expressions precede verb stressed with shì...de construction	13 PI N1 13 PII N2
Tones: on negative prefix bù- on number yī on numbers qī and bā	1 PD N2.1 3 PD N3.1 3 PD N3.1

Transposed objects in inverted sentences	3 PC N2
'two or three', etc., how expressed	6 PD N2.4
Value, expressions of, usually take -de	8 N2
Verbs (V):	1 PD N1.2
stative verbs (SV)	1 PD N1.3
equational verbs (EV)	5 PC N1
co-verbs (CV)	10 PIII N5
auxilliary verbs (AV)	7 PI N1
compound verbs (with -lai and -qu)	16 PI N1
resultative compound verbs (RCV)	21 PI N1
Verbs reduplicated:	9 N4
reviewed	18 PIV
and -le	18 PIV N4
Verb-object compounds (VO):	7 PI N3
with modified objects	7 PII N3
VOVde pattern describes manner	16 PIV N4
VOVle pattern with time spent expressions	15 PIII N3
-wán as ending to resultative compound verbs	21 Voc
Weeks, how designated	13 Voc
'whenever' with yi...jiu	19 PIV N6
yàoshi...jiu expresses supposition	19 PV N5
yě or dōu in exclusive statements	14 PIII,IV N3, 4
Years, how designated	13 Voc
yī, tones on number	3 PD N3.1
yi...jiu to express 'as soon as', 'whenever'	
yidiǎnr: sometimes diǎnr	16 N5
after adverbs in expressing manner in commands	16 PV N5
in degrees of comparison	23 PII N4
yíge as indefinite article ('a' or 'an')	4 PD N1, 3
yǐhòu and relative time	20 PII,III N2, 3
yǐqián and relative time	20 PII,III N2, 3
yǒu: impersonal use of verb	8 N6
existence with verb	10 PI N3
and méiyǒu in similarity and dissimilarity	22 PII,III N1
in measuring length, distances, etc.	23 PIII,IV N3

yòu and yě, adverbs in inclusive and exclusive answers	24 PII N3
zai: location with verb	10 PII N4
as co-verb of location	10 PIII N5
as suffix to verbs	16 PII N2
Zero expressed by líng	6 PC N2.3
-zháo as ending to resultative compound verbs	21 Voc
-zhe: continuance verb suffix	17 PII N3
indicates manner (as setting for main action)	17 PII N3
and ne both used in continuance	17 PIV N3
zuì, comparison with adverb	22 PIV N3
zuò as co-verb of conveyance	11 PII n4

